



义务教育教科书

# 英语

## ENGLISH

九年级 (全一册)



北京师范大学出版社  
BEIJING NORMAL UNIVERSITY PRESS

义务教育教科书

ENGLISH

# 英语

九年级 全一册

主 编 王 蔷  
副 主 编 曹瑞珍 陈则航  
本册主编 王 蔷 马 欣

北京师范大学出版社



北京师范大学出版社  
· 北京 ·



# 前言

同学们:

翻开教材,你们会发现,这本教材的每个单元包含不同的学习板块。了解教材的内容和结构对充分利用教材展开学习有重要意义。下面我们就一起看看各个板块的主要内容和功能吧。

## Getting Ready



这是每个单元的起始。你们将在这个板块了解单元话题和单元学习目标,学习话题词汇,并使用这些词汇进行初步的讨论。

## Lessons

每单元有三个语言输入课。你们将在这些课中学习语言知识,提升语言技能。



## Communication Workshop

这一课是语言输出课。你们将在学习范文的基础上,逐步提高英语写作和口语表达的能力。



## Check Your Progress



学完了前面的内容,你们将在这里对所学内容进行自我检测,了解自己的学习效果。

## Across Cultures / Fun Zone

这两个板块呈现了中外文化知识和轻松、有趣的英语活动,是弹性学习内容。你们可以根据学习情况选择使用。



## Study Help

你们将在这个板块了解多种学习策略。试试看,你们会发现适合自己的学习方法。



## Unit Diary



这是每个单元的结尾。反思一下,自己在这个单元学到了什么,有哪些进步,哪里有待提高。

教材除了以上主要学习单元外,还设计了丰富的**自主学习资源**。如果有兴趣,请读一读**Literature Spot**中的经典文学作品,与其他同学合作完成**Project**,做一做**Workbook**中与学习单元配套的练习。如果学习中遇到了困难,试着到**Grammar Summary**、**Notes to the Texts**、**Tapescripts**以及**词表**中查找答案。衷心希望你们感受英语学习的快乐,不断进步!

# Scope and Sequence

Unit / Pages	Skills
<b>1</b> <b>Language</b> 5~16	<b>Reading:</b> Body Language; Language Learning Tips <b>Listening:</b> Different Kinds of English <b>Speaking:</b> Talking about English learning tips <b>Writing:</b> Tips for English Learning
<b>2</b> <b>Books</b> 17~28	<b>Reading:</b> Classics; Tom Sawyer <b>Listening:</b> The Book Club <b>Speaking:</b> Introducing books <b>Writing:</b> Which Is Better—Paper Textbooks or E-textbooks?
<b>3</b> <b>Creativity</b> 29~40	<b>Reading:</b> A Famous Inventor; Creative Minds <b>Listening:</b> Good or Bad? <b>Speaking:</b> Introducing scientists and inventors <b>Writing:</b> My Favourite Scientist / Inventor
<b>4</b> <b>Space</b> 41~52	<b>Reading:</b> Life in Space; The Spaceship <b>Listening:</b> The Amazing Shenzhou <b>Speaking:</b> Talking about life in space <b>Writing:</b> A Letter to an Astronaut
<b>5</b> <b>Literature</b> 53~64	<b>Reading:</b> Meeting Anne; A Famous Writer <b>Listening:</b> The Dark Room <b>Speaking:</b> Acting out a play <b>Writing:</b> A Story
<b>6</b> <b>Role Models</b> 65~76	<b>Reading:</b> Basketball Star—Yao Ming; Steve Jobs <b>Listening:</b> People in Our Lives <b>Speaking:</b> Introducing a person <b>Writing:</b> My Role Model
<b>7</b> <b>Journeys</b> 77~88	<b>Reading:</b> The Silk Road; Life Is a Journey; To the South Pole <b>Speaking:</b> Talking about journeys <b>Writing:</b> My Journey
<b>8</b> <b>Discoveries</b> 89~100	<b>Reading:</b> Famous Discoveries; An Experiment Report <b>Listening:</b> Discovery of the Year <b>Speaking:</b> Giving a formal speech <b>Writing:</b> My Discovery / Experience
<b>9</b> <b>Save the Planet</b> 101~112	<b>Reading:</b> Going Green; Tree Heroes <b>Listening:</b> Our River <b>Speaking:</b> Talking about ways to protect the environment <b>Writing:</b> Save the Planet
<b>Appendices pp. 113~210</b>	



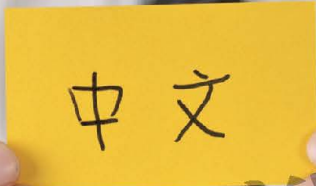
Strategies	Functions	Vocabulary	Grammar
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ <b>Reading:</b> Dealing with difficult words</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Checking for clarification</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Nationalities / languages</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 被动语态</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ <b>Reading:</b> Understanding true meaning</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Judgement and evaluation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Reading material</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 被动语态</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ <b>Reading:</b> Understanding cause and effect relationship</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Stating opinions</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Creativity</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 连词</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ <b>Listening:</b> Listening for numbers</li> <li>♦ <b>Reading:</b> Making inferences</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Logical relations</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Space</li> <li>♦ Space programme</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ <i>So that / so... that</i></li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ <b>Reading:</b> Putting events in time order</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Judgement and evaluation</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Types of literature</li> <li>♦ Describing objects</li> <li>♦ Animals</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 定语从句</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ <b>Reading:</b> Identifying the main idea</li> <li>♦ <b>Listening:</b> Identifying the speaker's views</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Introducing a person</li> <li>♦ Stating reasons</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Role models</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 不定式</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ <b>Reading :</b> Poem appreciation</li> <li>♦ <b>Reading:</b> Identifying topic sentences</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Describing a journey</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Places</li> <li>♦ Life</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 冠词</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ <b>Reading:</b> Taking notes</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Making a formal speech</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Discoveries</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ 条件状语从句</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ <b>Reading:</b> Problems and solutions</li> <li>♦ <b>Reading:</b> Facts and opinions</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Interview</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>♦ Pollution</li> </ul>	

# 语法分布表

语法项目		分 布
名词		七上: Get Ready D 七下: Unit 3 八下: Unit 3
代词		七上: Get Ready B, Get Ready E, Unit 1, Unit 3, Unit 4 八下: Unit 2, Unit 6
数词		七上: Get Ready B, Get Ready C 七下: Unit 5
介词和介词短语		七上: Get Ready D, Unit 2, Unit 3 八上: Unit 5, Unit 6
连词		七下: Unit 6 八上: Unit 6 八下: Unit 2, Unit 4 九年级: Unit 3, Unit 4
形容词		八上: Unit 3
副词		七上: Unit 4 七下: Unit 1, Unit 6 八上: Unit 3
冠词		七上: Unit 1 九年级: Unit 7
动词	情态动词	七上: Unit 4 八上: Unit 2
	现在进行时	七下: Unit 2
	一般现在时	七上: Get Ready A, Unit 2 七下: Unit 1
	一般过去时	七下: Unit 5 八上: Unit 1
	一般将来时	七下: Unit 4
	过去进行时	八上: Unit 5 八上: Unit 6
	现在完成时	八下: Unit 2, Unit 3
	被动语态	九年级: Unit 1, Unit 2
	非谓语动词	九年级: Unit 6
构词法		七下: Unit 2, Unit 6 八上: Unit 1, Unit 3, Unit 4
句子种类		七上: Get Ready A, Get Ready D, Unit 4 八上: Unit 1 八下: Unit 5, Unit 6 九年级: Unit 1
简单句		七上: Unit 3 七下: Unit 2, Unit 6
并列复合句		七下: Unit 6
主从复合句	宾语从句	八下: Unit 1, Unit 5, Unit 6
	状语从句	八上: Unit 4 八下: Unit 4 九年级: Unit 4, Unit 8
	定语从句	九年级: Unit 5

# Unit 1

- ▶ Talk about body language and customs.
- ▶ Read about language learning tips.
- ▶ Listen to a discussion about different kinds of English.
- ▶ Write language learning tips.
- ▶ Learn about passive voice and tag questions.



# Language

## Getting Ready

1 Look at the Key Words. Which are nationalities? Which are languages? Which are both?

**Key Words: Nationalities / Languages**

American, Australian, British, Canadian, Chinese, English, French, German, Indian, Japanese, Russian

### Example

*French is a nationality and also a language.*

2 Look at the photos and discuss the questions below.

- 1 How can we pass on information?
- 2 How many languages can you speak? What are they?
- 3 Do you know any sign language? What gestures do you use to communicate? (e.g. thumbs up, waving your hand...)



# 1 Body Language

## Warm-up

1 Match the body language with their meanings.



thumbs up   high five   OK sign   V sign

- a It is OK.                      b I win!  
c Yeah!                              d Well done!

## Reading

2 Skim the text. What is the writer's opinion on the importance of body language?

3 Read the text and answer the following questions.

- 1 How can body language help us communicate?
- 2 What difficulties may we have when using body language in other cultures?



Body language is an important form of communication that is used everywhere, although we don't often think about it. Some messages are understood by people around the world simply because they are not communicated by words. For example, in many countries, people nod their heads to show agreement and they put their fingers up to their mouths to ask for silence.



However, body language is used differently in different cultures. For example, in some western cultures, people shrug their shoulders to show they don't understand or they don't care about something. This isn't common in other places. In Asian countries, such as Japan, people bow to show respect when they greet each other or say goodbye. This isn't done in the West.

Sometimes, people think they know about the body language customs of certain cultures, but in fact, they don't know enough. Take bowing as an example. Many travellers aren't sure how to bow or when to bow while in Japan. Kissing is another example that we need to learn about. In many European cultures, women and children are kissed on each cheek by family members or friends when they meet in the street. New friends are often greeted with a kiss on the cheek by Europeans at parties. Two men usually shake hands and put their free hand on each other's shoulders. In the Middle East, you must be careful about your feet. It is very rude to show the bottom of your shoe when you rest one leg on top of the other. It is also not polite to touch people with your shoes.

So, as we can see, body language is just as important as the spoken language when we communicate with people from other cultures.



## 4 Complete the table according to the text.

Body language	Purpose	Place
nod	to show _____	around the world
_____	to ask for silence	around the world
shrug shoulders	to show they don't _____ or _____	in some _____
bow	to show _____	in _____, especially in _____
_____	greeting (for women & children)	in Europe
_____	men greeting each other	in Europe

Grammar 被动语态 (一般现在时)

## 5 Read the following sentences and find similar ones from the text. Then find rules to complete the table.

*They are understood by people around the world.*

*It isn't done in the West.*

## 被动语态

主语+	助动词 +	过去分词
He / She / It	_____	kissed ... given ...
You / We / They	_____	seen ... shown ...
I	_____	used ...

⇒ Grammar Summary 1, page 172.

## 6 Circle the doer in the following sentences.

- This meal is cooked by my grandpa.
- English is spoken by many people around the world.
- The glass is broken by Tim.

## 7 Complete the following sentences with the passive voice.

- The cakes \_\_\_\_\_ (make) by Mum.
- The letter \_\_\_\_\_ (write) in Chinese.
- We \_\_\_\_\_ (invite) to the party.
- Mary \_\_\_\_\_ (give) lots of gifts.

## 8 Change the following sentences into the passive voice.

- Tourists buy a lot of postcards here.
- Students take tests every Friday.
- Sarah walks the dog every day.
- Dad does all the housework.

## Speaking

## 9 Who usually does the following housework in your family?

Use the passive voice to make sentences.

- make breakfast
- sweep the floor
- wash the dishes
- cook dinner

## 10 Pair Work What body language do you / your friends / your parents often use? Share with your partner.

## Example

A: *What body language do your parents often use?*

B: *My mum often hugs me. Hugging is used to show love.*

- holding hands (love)
- patting shoulders (support)
- crossing arms (anger)
- putting thumbs up (praise)
- clapping hands (encourage)

# 2

## Different Kinds of English



*Xiaoxia is studying in the United States this summer. She is talking with her teacher about the differences between British English and American English.*

### Warm-up

1 Read the words below. Match the words with the same meaning.

mate	petrol
cookie	trainers
gas	friend
sneakers	biscuit

2 Do you know any other differences between British English and American English?

### Listening

3 Listen to the dialogue and tick the differences mentioned.

<input type="checkbox"/> spelling	<input type="checkbox"/> use of words
<input type="checkbox"/> word order	<input type="checkbox"/> pronunciation

4 Listen and circle the examples mentioned in the dialogue.

notes / bills

colour / color

check / bill

gray / grey

sweater / jumper

flat / apartment

programme / program

first floor / ground floor

5 Listen again and write the examples in the correct box below.





**Function** 确认信息

**6** Read the Key Expressions.



**Key Expressions: Checking for clarification**

It's hard, isn't it?

But you pay with "bills", don't you?

You didn't realise there were so many differences, did you?

But you understand each other, don't you?

**7** What do the responses mean?  
Circle *a* or *b*.

1 A: But you pay with bills, don't you?

B: **Yes, I do.**

a "I pay with bills."

b "I don't pay with bills."

2 A: You didn't realise there were so many differences, did you?

B: **No, I didn't.**

a "I realised there were so many differences."

b "I didn't realise there were so many differences."

**8** Choose the correct question tag.

1 Your friend is here, **is he / isn't he?**

2 You speak English, **aren't you / don't you?**

3 You haven't seen her, **have you / has she?**

4 You didn't go out last night, **do you / did you?**

5 Ben doesn't have a sister, **has he / does he?**

**9** Fill in the blanks with the correct question tags.

1 Rachel hasn't finished her homework, \_\_\_\_\_?

2 They will come over for dinner, \_\_\_\_\_?

3 Judy won the competition, \_\_\_\_\_?

4 You drink coffee, \_\_\_\_\_?

5 They weren't at home, \_\_\_\_\_?

**Speaking**

**10 Pair Work** Guess the answers to the following questions and ask your partner for clarification.

- How old is your partner?
- How does your partner come to school?
- What sport can your partner do?
- What is your partner's mother's job?
- Did your partner watch TV yesterday?

**Example**

A: *You are seventeen years old, aren't you?*

B: *Yes, I am. / No, I'm ... years old.*

**11 Your Turn** Work in groups. Give a presentation on the differences between British English and American English.

**Example**

*There are some differences between British English and American English. You can see these differences in ...*

# 3 Language Learning Tips



## Warm-up

- 1 What do you think is difficult about learning English? What do you do to improve your English?

### Example

*Remembering English words is difficult for me. I always have a small notebook with me, and I write down new words. It helps.*

## Reading

- 2 Read the discussion and answer the questions.
  - a What problems does David have in English learning?
  - b What suggestions do the three students give him?
  - c What suggestions does Mrs Smith give him?



David

Well, I don't know how you all feel, but I find English really difficult. There are just so many words to remember, and the language structures are so difficult to understand. My problem is that I can't remember all the new words and I find long passages difficult to understand. I'm so worried. How can I improve my English?



Tina

Don't worry, David. I often use chants, songs and pictures to help me remember new words, and they're quite useful. I also check the number of words I can remember each day. Then I'll test myself again after one or two days. For very difficult words, I'll review them again one or two weeks later. The important thing is to review the new words often.



Brian

For long passages, you should try to understand the general meaning and key points first. And for language structures, the best way to remember them is to use them. Try to do more reading, listening, speaking and writing in English. The more you use them, the easier learning English will be.



Anne

As for me, I like to check my learning progress once a week. I usually make a list of things I do well and those I don't. Then I'll set my goals and work out a learning plan to achieve them. I find it very useful, and my English has improved a lot. By the way, I always reward myself when I achieve my goals.



Mrs Smith

Never give up, David. Learning English is hard, but your English is already very good. I'm sure you'll find a learning method that suits you. Remember, we're all good at different things and we can all make a difference!



## 3 Read the text again and fill in the table.

Name	Suggestions
Tina	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>remember new words using _____</li> <li>_____ the new words</li> </ul>
Brian	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>for long passages, try to understand _____</li> <li>_____ language structures in order to remember them</li> </ul>
Anne	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>_____ once a week</li> <li>use a _____ to achieve goals, _____ yourself once they are achieved</li> </ul>

## 4 Read the Reading Help. Then choose the correct meaning of the words from the text.

**Reading Help: Dealing with difficult words**

- Read the sentence with the difficult word. Is the word a noun, an adjective, a verb or an adverb?
- Read the sentences before and after and try to guess the meaning from the context.

## 1 review (para. 2)

- a learn                      b look again  
c change

## 2 reward (para. 4)

- a happy                      b a prize  
c give something to someone because of good work, behaviour, etc.

## 3 suit (para. 5)

- a correct    b be right for    c a way

5 **Your Opinion** Which suggestion do you think is helpful for you? What suggestion would you give to David?

## 6 Look at the underlined words in the text. Choose the correct meaning.

An interesting way to learn English is by watching films. Choose a (1) familiar film – one that you've watched more than once. Don't read the (2) subtitles on the screen while you watch it. Listen carefully and (3)  jot down useful words or phrases in a notebook. It is difficult to listen to English (4) continuously for a long time, so at first you may just watch 10 - 15 minutes a day.

- 1 a like                      b knowing sth very well  
2 a words shown at the bottom of a film    b images in a film  
3 a write down quickly    b remember  
4 a slowly                      b without stopping

□ **Speaking**7 **Group Work** Get into groups of four. Discuss your English learning problems and give each other suggestions.**Example**

- A:** *I can't remember new words. What can I do?*  
**B:** *I think it's a good idea to use chants and songs to remember new words. It is fun and easy!*



# Communication Workshop

## Reading

- 1 Read Minghua's online discussion with Steve. What learning tips does Steve offer? Write *V* for vocabulary, *G* for grammar and *S* for speaking in the circles.



Hi. I'm Minghua from China. I'm learning English and I feel so frustrated. There are just so many new words to remember and English grammar rules are really confusing. I become very nervous when I speak English, too. What should I do?

Hi Minghua,

Don't be frustrated. Learning a new language is not easy. I can share some of my learning tips with you.

- For vocabulary, I think it's useful to make word lists for different topics. For example, you can make lists for fruit, vegetables and animals. Then you can review them whenever you have time. The more you review, the more easily you'll remember! And when you want to speak or write on a certain topic, you can refer to those lists.
- As for grammar rules, I've used pictures and tables to help me, for example with verb tenses. I've also tried to put difficult structures into songs, but I think the best way to remember grammar rules is to use them. These methods work well for me. You can have a try.
- In the past, I was also very nervous when I spoke English in class because I was afraid of making mistakes. Then, I tried to talk to myself. Whenever I was alone, I just talked to myself in English. It worked. Now I no longer feel nervous when I speak English in class!

I hope these tips are helpful for you. I am sure you will feel less frustrated soon.

Good luck!

Steve

## Text Builder

- 2 Look at the learning problems in the table and find the solutions in the online discussion and complete the table.



English-learning Problems	Solutions
① Trouble with remembering new words	→
② Frustration with grammar rules	→
③ Nervous when speaking	→

### Writing

3 Write one or two of your English learning problems.

4 Exchange your English learning problems with your partner. Write down solutions to your partner's problems.

My partner John has difficulty in ... I think he should ...

### Speaking

5 Tell the class about your partner's English learning problems and your solutions.



## Check Your Progress

**A** Complete the passage. Use the correct form of the words on the right.

The difference between 1 \_\_\_\_\_ and 2 \_\_\_\_\_ spelling makes me feel 3 \_\_\_\_\_. However, it's important to pay 4 \_\_\_\_\_ to this when writing. 5 \_\_\_\_\_ letters in 6 \_\_\_\_\_ words make spelling more 7 \_\_\_\_\_, but the more you use them, the 8 \_\_\_\_\_ you will feel.

Britain  
America  
frustration  
attend  
silence  
England  
difficulty  
ease

**B** Write the correct words in the blanks.

cross nod hug kiss shrug shake

You can ...

- 9 \_\_\_\_\_ your mother to show you love her.  
10 \_\_\_\_\_ your shoulders if you don't understand.  
11 \_\_\_\_\_ your family or friends on the cheek when you meet in Europe.  
12 \_\_\_\_\_ someone's hand to say hello.  
13 \_\_\_\_\_ your head to agree.  
14 \_\_\_\_\_ your arms to show you are angry.

**C** Change the following sentences from active voice to passive voice.

People in Australia speak English.

→ *English is spoken by people in Australia.*

- 15 She sells cakes in the market.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
16 Dad washes the dishes every evening.  
\_\_\_\_\_  
17 We use pictures to remember new words.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**D** Use the words to make sentences in the passive voice.

Dinner / every day / Ada / cooks

→ *Dinner is cooked by Ada every day.*

- 18 them / Computer games / on Saturdays. / play  
\_\_\_\_\_  
19 writes / him / Beautiful songs.  
\_\_\_\_\_

- 20 The floor / me / sweep / in the morning.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**E** Circle the correct question tags.

- 21 You've been there, **aren't you** / haven't you?  
22 She speaks American English, **doesn't she** / does she?  
23 The dog didn't eat the ball, **did it** / does it?  
24 Your mother is not a doctor, **isn't she** / is she?  
25 We're number one, **aren't we** / are we?  
26 You'll do your homework, **won't you** / do you?



## Chinese and English

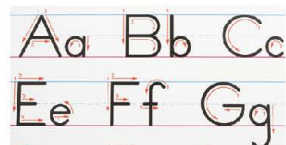
- 1 Do you think English is a difficult language? Why / Why not?
- 2 Read the text and answer the questions.
  - 1 Which two languages are spoken by more people in the world than any other language?
  - 2 Why is Chinese difficult to learn?
  - 3 How are English letters and pronunciation related?
  - 4 How are tones used in Chinese?
- 3 Read the text again. Which language do you think is more difficult, English or Chinese? Why?

Chinese and English are very different languages. Each language developed along a different path and has a very different system of writing and pronunciation. However, despite their huge differences, both languages are spoken by more people in the world than any other language.



Chinese began to develop around 1000 BC. It has gone through many forms and has many different dialects (方言). Putonghua is now the most widely used form of Chinese. English began to develop in Britain around the year 100 AD. Local languages, old German, Latin and other European languages mixed and became a new language. This is why, even today, many words in English sound familiar to people who speak other European languages.

Chinese writing uses a system of strokes (笔画) to make characters, which represent a sound, a word or an idea. Learning to read Chinese takes great memorization skills and learning to write it takes many hours of repeated practice. Words must be learnt together with their symbol, meaning and pronunciation.



English, on the other hand, uses an alphabet (字母). Each letter and some letter combinations (组合) have a different sound. Letters are put together to make a word with a particular pronunciation. Once you learn the basic patterns, you can say most new words you see.

Tone (语调) is used very differently in Chinese and English. Chinese has four tones, which usually convey (表达) the actual meaning of a word. In English, tone of voice creates emphasis (强调), follows a pattern or conveys the emotions (情感) or attitude (态度) of the speaker.



### Communication Problems

- To check if someone understands you, you can say: "Do you understand me?" You can also use these expressions:

- Do you know what I mean?
- I think ..., don't you?



- If someone doesn't understand what you say, try saying it in a different way. For example:

A: In many countries, you can ask for silence by putting your finger up to your mouth.

B: Sorry?

A: I mean, you can ask others to keep quiet by putting your finger up to your mouth.

B: I see.



**Work in pairs. Say these sentences in a different way.**

- English structures are very complex.
- I can't do revision continuously for hours.
- My English test result is very unsatisfactory. I feel so frustrated.

### Unit Diary

How well can you do these?



Language and Skills	• I can understand the texts about body language and language learning tips.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can make sentences in the passive voice.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can use tag questions to check for clarification and agreement.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I know how to deal with difficult words.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can write about my English learning problems and the ways to solve them.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Culture	• I know some differences between English and Chinese.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Study Skills	• I know how to solve communication problems.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

# Unit 2

- ▶ Talk about different kinds of books.
- ▶ Read an introduction about some books.
- ▶ Listen to students talking about books.
- ▶ Write about books and e-books.
- ▶ Learn more about passive voice.



A B  
C D



# Books

## Getting Ready

1 Look at the Key Words. What do you like to read?

2 Look at the pictures B, C and D. Where are the books? Match the letters with the locations.

**Key Words:** Reading material  
comic book, classic, dictionary,  
e-book, history book,  
how-to book, play, poem,  
science fiction book, short story

- in a bookshop
- on the Internet
- in a library



# 4 Classics

## Warm-up

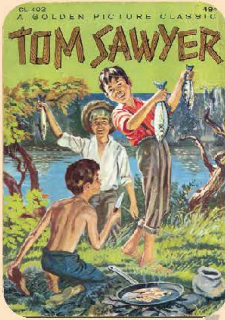
1 Match the writers (1-4) with the book titles (a-d). Which books have you read? Do you like them? Why or why not?

- |                   |                                       |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1 J.K. Rowling    | a Lord of the Flies                   |
| 2 Mark Twain      | b The Adventures of Tom Sawyer        |
| 3 Lewis Carroll   | c Harry Potter and the Goblet of Fire |
| 4 William Golding | d Alice's Adventures in Wonderland    |

## Reading

2 Work in groups of three. Each read a passage. Then ask and answer the questions.

- 1 What is the title of the book?
- 2 Who is the writer?
- 3 Who are the main characters?
- 4 When was it published?



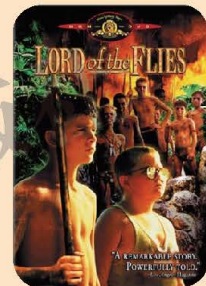
1 Tom Sawyer first appeared in Mark Twain's book **The Adventures of Tom Sawyer**. He also appears in three other books by Twain. Tom is an orphan. His curiosity and friendship with a boy named Huckleberry Finn often get him into trouble with his serious Aunt Polly.

The book includes dialogues that show how language was spoken at the time. At the time it was published, people weren't used to this and it upset some people. However, it has remained a popular and important book since it was first published in 1876.



2 The silly creatures in **Alice's Adventures in Wonderland** were created by Lewis Carroll. In the 1865 book, a young girl named Alice falls down a rabbit hole and drops into a strange land. As she travels through the land, she meets many characters, solves puzzles and tries to avoid the awful Queen of Hearts.

Carroll was very bright and he had a degree in maths from Oxford. When he wrote the book, he also added maths puzzles to the story. As they were so well hidden, many readers today still enjoy trying to find and solve these puzzles.



3 **Lord of the Flies** was written by William Golding. The book is about a group of young boys. They are forced to stay on an island together after their plane has an accident. As they wait for help, they try to live off the land and build a small society. However, the boys don't get along, and have trouble keeping the peace.

The book was published in 1954. Although it was not a great success at first, it became popular later. By the early 1960s, it was taught in many schools in Britain. Two films have also been made of the story.



3 Read the three texts. Which book is each sentence about?

- 1 The main character has a good friend.
- 2 The characters have a fight.
- 3 One of the characters is a serious woman.
- 4 It was not popular when it was published.
- 5 The writer wrote about the main character in four of his books.

4 **Your Opinion** What do the three books from page 18 have in common? How are they different?

**Grammar** 被动语态 (其他时态)

5 Read the sentences and find similar ones from the text. Then complete the table below.

*Lord of the Flies was written by William Golding.  
By the early 1960s, it was taught in many schools in Britain.*

主动语态	被动语态
John Clear made these records.	These records _____ by John Clear.
He will finish the work on time.	The work _____ on time (by him).
The old man has planted 1,000 trees this year.	1,000 trees _____ by the old man this year.

⇒ **Grammar Summary 1, page 172.**

**Watch out!**

In passive sentences, we often leave out the doer of the action (*by X*) because the doer may be unknown, unimportant or obvious.

6 Change these sentences into passive voice.

- 1 Two thieves stole the painting last night.
- 2 My parents have bought a new TV.
- 3 Dad has taken some nice photos.
- 4 The baby broke the glasses this morning.
- 5 Judy will finish the work at 7 pm.
- 6 Ben built this toy house last week.

**Speaking**

7 **Group Work** Imagine you are going to have a birthday party. What preparations have been done? Look at the picture and make sentences.

- hang up the decorations ✓
- make the cake ✓
- buy food ✓
- take out the plates ×
- put flowers on the table ×
- put candles on the cake ×



**Example**

*The decorations have been hung up.*

8 **Your Turn** Talk to your partner about your favourite book. Use the questions to help you.

- What's the title of the book?
- Who was it written by?
- When was it written?
- Where does the story take place?
- Who are the main characters?
- What is the story about?
- Do you like it? Why or why not?

# 5 The Book Club



## Warm-up

- 1 Do you like reading? What kind of books do you like to read? How often do you read?

### Example

*I like reading. Short stories are my favourite. I read at least three times a week. I usually read in the evening after doing my homework.*

- 2 Match the quotations with the meanings below.

Meaning	Quotation
a) I'm happy that the books I wrote are inspiring.	
b) People who read a lot today will succeed in the future.	
c) You need to choose good books to read.	
d) Books that encourage a love of reading are good.	

## Listening

- 3 Listen to the interview. Tick the quotations that are mentioned.

- 4 Listen to the interview again and answer the questions.

- 1 What's the programme's name?
- 2 What do the guests do for a living?
- 3 What are the topics discussed in the interview?
- 4 What's Peter's opinion? What's Sandra's opinion?



1 "I'm rather proud of the fact that I know several astronauts who became astronauts through reading my books."

2 "Any book that helps a child to form a habit of reading, to make reading one of his deep and continuing needs, is good for him."

3 "Today a reader, tomorrow a leader."

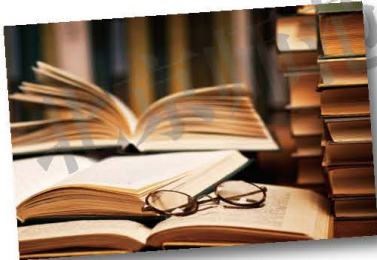
4 "The man who doesn't read good books has no advantage over the man who can't read them."





**5** Listen again and choose the best answer.

- Sandra White is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - famous
  - the host of the show
  - a teacher
- What does Peter think about Mark Twain?
  - He likes reading all kinds of books.
  - He can't read or write.
  - He is clever.
- Sandra thinks \_\_\_\_\_.
  - all books are wonderful
  - famous people only read good books
  - some books help people learn
- According to Sandra, a good book is \_\_\_\_\_.
  - easy
  - inspiring
  - interesting



**Function** 判断与评价1

**6** Read the Key Expressions.

**Key Expressions: Judgement and evaluation**

That's true.  
 Well, not all books help people learn.  
 ... but one thing is clear: good books are inspiring.  
 Right.  
 That's very interesting!

**Speaking**

- 7 Your Turn** What do you think of the quotations on page 20? Discuss with your partner.

**Example**

**A:** *What do you think of "Today a reader, tomorrow a leader."?*

**B:** *That's not always true. Reading can help, but you won't become a leader just by reading a lot of books.*

- 8 Pair Work** What kinds of books are good books? Talk with your partner. Give examples if possible.

**Example**

**A:** *I think good books can teach us a lot of things about human nature.*

**B:** *Right. And they should be interesting so people want to read them.*

- 9** Share your ideas in Exercise 8 with the class.

**Example**

*I like reading. I think reading is a good habit because it helps us learn about different things. For example ...*



# 6 Tom Sawyer

## Warm-up

- 1 Do you remember *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer* from page 18? Who wrote it? Who are the main characters?
- 2 Look at the picture. Which boy do you think Tom Sawyer is? What is he doing? Who is the other boy?

## Reading

- 3 Read the text. Was your prediction about Exercise 2 correct?
- 4 Read the text again and answer the questions.
  - 1 When and where did the story happen?
  - 2 What was Tom doing? Did he like it?
  - 3 Who did the work in the end? How did he feel about the work?

It was a beautiful Saturday morning, a perfect morning for playing or swimming. However, Tom had to finish the work Aunt Polly gave him. As Tom started to paint Aunt Polly's very long fence, along came Ben Rogers with a juicy apple in his hand.

Tom was silent. He focused on his painting like an artist.

"Looks like a lot of work, Tom."

Tom turned suddenly. "Oh, it's you, Ben! I didn't notice."

"I'm going swimming. Don't you wish you could come instead of doing work?"

"What do you call work?" asked Tom.

"Isn't that work?"

Tom kept painting and answered carelessly, "Well, maybe it is, and maybe it isn't. All I know is it isn't work for me."

"Oh come on. You can't mean you like it?"

Tom continued painting. "Like it? Well, I don't see why not. Does a boy get a chance to paint a fence every day?"

That put the thing in a new light. Ben stopped eating his apple. Tom swept his brush carefully back and forth, added a touch of paint here and there, and stopped to take a look at it all. Ben watched every move and became more and more interested until he finally said, "Tom, why don't you let me paint a little?"

Tom considered Ben's offer. "Well, no, I can't let you, Ben. You see, Aunt Polly's very proud of this fence. I think there isn't one boy in a thousand, maybe two thousand, that can do it the way it's got to be done."

"Oh come on. Let me try. I'd let you, if I were painting, Tom."

"Ben, I'd like to, honestly, but Aunt Polly, well ..."

"I'll be careful. Just let me try. I'll give you some of my apple."

"Well, no, Ben. I'm afraid ..."

"I'll give you all of it!"

Tom slowly gave Ben the paintbrush. Ben took the brush eagerly and started to paint. On Tom's face was a look of regret but in his heart, he was satisfied.







**5** Read the Reading Help. Then choose what the characters think when they speak. Use the context to help you.

### Reading Help: Understanding true meaning

- Characters, just like real people, may not always say what they mean and how they feel directly.
- The clues in the text, logic, personal experience and your knowledge of human behaviour can help you find out whether the characters mean what they say.

- 1** Tom turned suddenly. "Oh, it's you, Ben! I didn't notice."
- a** Tom was happy to see Ben.
  - b** Tom was surprised to see Ben.
  - c** Tom wanted Ben to think he was surprised to see him.
- 2** "What do you call work?" asked Tom.
- a** Tom enjoyed doing the work.
  - b** Tom didn't like the work at all.
  - c** Tom wanted to make Ben believe painting the fence was enjoyable.
- 3** "Well, no, I can't let you, Ben. You see, Aunt Polly's very proud of this fence. I think there isn't one boy in a thousand, maybe two thousand, that can do it the way it's got to be done."
- a** Tom didn't want Ben to do the work.
  - b** Tom tried to make Ben believe painting the fence was an honour.
  - c** Ben couldn't do the work as well as Tom.

**6** **Your Opinion** What kind of boy is Tom? How did he make Ben do the work for him?

### Vocabulary

**7** Complete the sentences with words from the box in their proper forms.

come on    put...in a new light  
take a look at    you can't mean

- 1** \_\_\_\_\_ that panda. It's so cute.  
**2** \_\_\_\_\_. Let me have one more candy.  
**3** \_\_\_\_\_ you forgot to take your English test?  
**4** When we \_\_\_\_\_ a matter \_\_\_\_\_, we can see a different side of it.

### Speaking

- 8** **Role-play** Role-play the story on page 22 with your partner.
- 9** **Your Turn** Think of an interesting story you have read and tell the class about it.

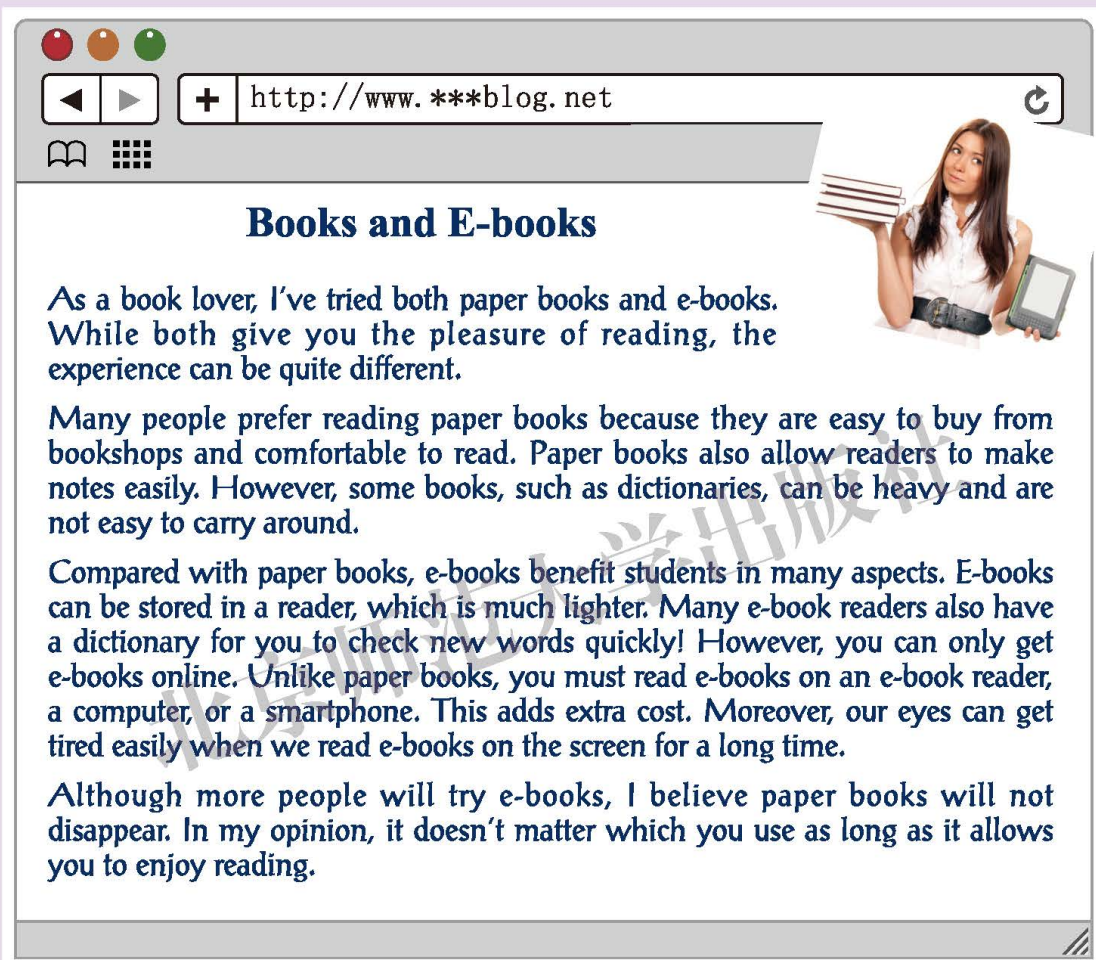
### Example

*I once read a book called "Charlotte's Web". The book has an interesting storyline. Once...*

# Communication Workshop

## Reading

- 1 Read Jenny's blog and complete the sentences below with e-books or paper books.




The screenshot shows a web browser window with the address bar containing "http://www.\*\*\*blog.net". The page title is "Books and E-books". The text of the blog post is as follows:

As a book lover, I've tried both paper books and e-books. While both give you the pleasure of reading, the experience can be quite different.

Many people prefer reading paper books because they are easy to buy from bookshops and comfortable to read. Paper books also allow readers to make notes easily. However, some books, such as dictionaries, can be heavy and are not easy to carry around.

Compared with paper books, e-books benefit students in many aspects. E-books can be stored in a reader, which is much lighter. Many e-book readers also have a dictionary for you to check new words quickly! However, you can only get e-books online. Unlike paper books, you must read e-books on an e-book reader, a computer, or a smartphone. This adds extra cost. Moreover, our eyes can get tired easily when we read e-books on the screen for a long time.

Although more people will try e-books, I believe paper books will not disappear. In my opinion, it doesn't matter which you use as long as it allows you to enjoy reading.



- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ are easier to get because you can buy them from bookshops.  
2 \_\_\_\_\_ are convenient for making notes.  
3 \_\_\_\_\_ are easier to read. Your eyes won't get tired easily.  
4 \_\_\_\_\_ are easier to carry since you can store many of them in one device.

## Text Builder

- 2 What's the function of each paragraph in Jenny's blog? (*Introduction, Conclusion, Advantages of paper books, Advantages of e-books*)

Para. 1: \_\_\_\_\_

Para. 2: \_\_\_\_\_

Para. 3: \_\_\_\_\_

Para. 4: \_\_\_\_\_



## Books

3 Look at the lists and complete the advantages and disadvantages of paper textbooks and e-textbooks.

① Introduction  
Topic

② Paper textbooks  
Advantages: \_\_\_\_\_

Disadvantages: \_\_\_\_\_

③ E-textbooks  
Advantages: \_\_\_\_\_

Disadvantages: \_\_\_\_\_

④ Conclusion  
Personal opinions/  
Summary



### Writing

4 Write about your opinion on e-textbooks and paper textbooks. Use your notes from Exercise 3 and the example on page 24 to help you.

#### Example

*Compared to e-textbooks, paper textbooks are ...*

### Speaking

5 Tell the class about your opinion on e-textbooks and paper textbooks.

I prefer ... to ... for several reasons. First of all, ...

Which Is Better — Paper Textbooks or E-textbooks?

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



## Check Your Progress

**A** Match the needs with the types of books.

I am / need to ...

Types of books

- 1 going to Europe
- 2 know what a word means
- 3 have a laugh
- 4 build a doghouse
- 5 making dinner
- 6 do research on Qing Dynasty
- 7 read a good story

- cookbook
- travel book
- comic book
- how-to book
- history book
- dictionary
- joke book

**C** Write sentences in the blanks based on the example given.

Present

*The book is read by many people.* \_\_\_\_\_

13 Past

\_\_\_\_\_

14 Future

\_\_\_\_\_

15 Present continuous

\_\_\_\_\_

16 Present perfect

\_\_\_\_\_

**B** Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box.

remain    force    create  
depend on    prefer

- 8 Shakespeare \_\_\_\_\_ many interesting characters in his works.
- 9 --- Coffee or tea?  
-- I would \_\_\_\_\_ tea, thanks.
- 10 Robert \_\_\_\_\_ close to his Chinese students after he went back to America.
- 11 It's very hard to \_\_\_\_\_ a kid to eat something he doesn't want to.
- 12 Whether we need more food \_\_\_\_\_ how many people come.

**D** What English sayings are these? Change the following sentences from passive voice to active voice and find them.

The work is made light by many hands.  
→ *Many hands make light work.*

- 17 The cat is killed by curiosity.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 18 The dust was bitten by the man.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 19 The sheep can be separated from the goats by Douglas.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 20 All his eggs were put in one basket by Gavin.  
\_\_\_\_\_



1 Which characters are these sentences about? Write the correct names in the blanks.

Harry          Alice          Tom

1 \_\_\_\_\_ meets a terrible queen in a strange place.



2 \_\_\_\_\_ lives with his aunt who is serious.

3 \_\_\_\_\_ and his friends can do magic.



2 Read and answer these questions about books.

1 Who has a best friend called Huckleberry Finn?

2 Who is the author of "The Lord of the Rings"?

3 Which book is about some boys who live on an island?

4 Who is the main character of J.K. Rowling's world-famous book series?

5 What is the name of the special land in "The Lion, the Witch and the Wardrobe"?

3 Put these notes in the correct order to find out what happens in the story "A Christmas Carol" by Charles Dickens.

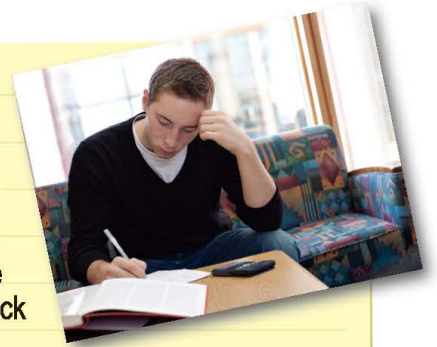
- a Scrooge wakes up. He is grateful that he has been returned to Christmas Day. He rushes out onto the street to share his newly found Christmas spirit of kindness and generosity (慷慨).
- b Finally the *Spirit of Christmas Yet to Come* leads Scrooge through scenes related to a man's recent death. Scrooge looks at the headstone (墓碑) and is shocked to read his own name.
- c Later that night, the *Spirit of Christmas Past* takes Scrooge on a journey into the past to previous Christmas from his early years.
- d After that, the *Spirit of Christmas Present* takes Scrooge through London to unveil Christmas as it will happen that year.
- e Scrooge, a mean old man, sits in his store on a cold Christmas Eve. His nephew, Fred, pays him a visit and invites him to his Christmas party. Scrooge responds coldly.



### Revision for Exams

#### Read these tips:

- Be clear about the things that are going to be tested, e.g. grammar.
- Read the texts in the textbook again. Look through the “Key Words”, “Key Expressions” and “Grammar” and check the things you are not sure of.
- Read through the “Reading help” and “Listening help” boxes. Make sure you understand the tips.
- Look through your written work this year. List your most common mistakes.



#### Make a revision timetable:

- Plan what you need to revise every day in a timetable and set achievable goals.
- Set some time for breaks in your timetable.
- At the end of each day, review your own progress.



**Make your own revision timetable.**

北京师范大学出版社

## Unit Diary

How well can you do these?



Language and Skills	• I can understand some book reviews and the extract from <i>The Adventures of Tom Sawyer</i> .	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can make sentences in the passive voice in different tenses.	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can understand the true meaning behind what a person says.	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can understand other's opinions.	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can write about my opinions about paper textbooks and e-textbooks.	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>
Study Skills	• I know how to make a revision timetable.	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/>



- ▶ Talk about inventors and inventions.
- ▶ Read about introductions of an inventor and inventions.
- ▶ Listen to a debate about inventions.
- ▶ Write about your favourite scientist or inventor.
- ▶ Learn about conjunctions.



# Creativity

## Getting Ready

1 Look at the Key Words and the photos. Which jobs do you think are the most creative? Why?

### Key Words: Creativity

artist, inventor, musician, photographer, writer  
 build, create, design, discover, draw, paint, produce, think, work in a team, write

### Example

*I think an artist's work is very creative. They draw and design things that we see every day.*

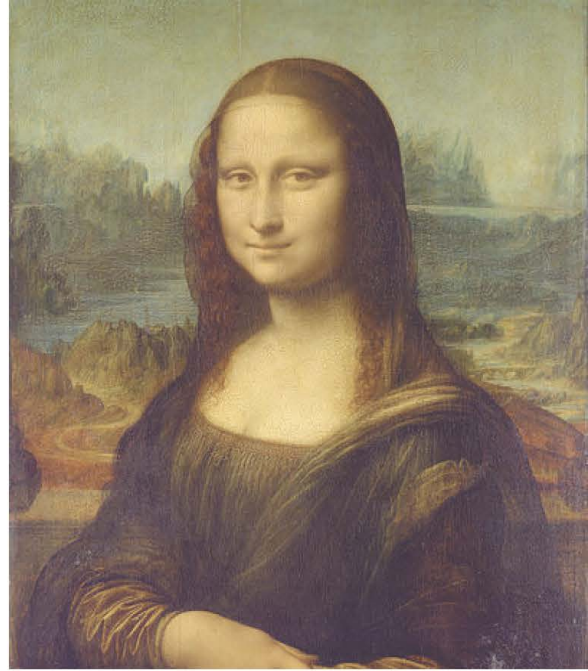
2 Think about your week. What creative things did you do?

- write       draw       paint  
 take photos       build things  
 other \_\_\_\_\_



# 7

## A Famous Inventor



### Warm-up

- 1 Look at the painting on the right. Do you know the name of it? Who painted it?

### Reading

- 2 Read the text and complete the sentence.

Leonardo da Vinci was \_\_\_\_\_.  
a) a painter b) an inventor c) both



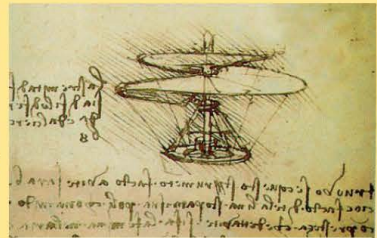
Leonardo da Vinci was born on April 15th, 1452 in a northern Italian town. He is considered one of the greatest painters of all time. He is still famous today because of the Mona Lisa and other well-known paintings. However, not many people know he was also an engineer and an inventor.

Da Vinci was interested in science and art, and he was a pioneer in many areas. He drew plans and pictures and wrote about his many ideas in his diaries. Since he died on May 2nd, 1519, people have been learning from them. They included plans for an

adding machine, bridges as well as drawings of musical instruments, flying machines and machines for war, such as guns.

Since many of da Vinci's inventions were far ahead of their time, they were only tested hundreds of years later. Because he couldn't test them, not all of da Vinci's plans worked out as well as he wished. However, some of his ideas worked well. For example, one of his bridges was finally built 500 years after it was drawn and flying machines, such as helicopters, are very common now.

Some think da Vinci wanted to keep his ideas secret as he wrote his diary in code. Others think it was just easier for him to write this way because he was left-handed. Either way, da Vinci's diaries can only be read with a mirror because everything is written backwards. As it took some time to translate the diaries, they were published more than 150 years after his death.



*Da Vinci's drawing of an early helicopter. You can see his special Italian writing below the drawing.*

- 3 Skim the text and circle the things that da Vinci planned or invented.

guns      bridges      war machines      computers      an adding machine  
diaries      helicopters      musical instruments      doctor's instruments



## Creativity

- 4 Read the text again and answer the questions.
- 1 What does "pioneer" (para. 2) mean?
  - 2 Why weren't da Vinci's inventions tested when he was alive?
  - 3 Which of da Vinci's ideas worked well?
  - 4 What was special about da Vinci's diaries?

▣ **Grammar** 连词

- 5 Complete the sentences according to the text.

**because, since, as (reason)**

Others think it was just easier for him to write this way \_\_\_\_\_ he was left-handed.

\_\_\_\_\_ it took some time to translate the diaries, they were published more than 150 years after his death.

\_\_\_\_\_ many of da Vinci's inventions were far ahead of their time, they were only tested hundreds of years later.

**as well as (addition)**

They included plans for an adding machine, bridges \_\_\_\_\_ drawings of musical instruments.

⇒ **Grammar Summary 2, page 172.**

**Watch out!**

*Since* he died on May 2nd, 1519, people have been learning from them.

(Here, *since* ≠ *because*, *since* = from a particular time in the past until the present)

Not all of da Vinci's plans worked out *as well as* he wished.

(Here, *as well as* ≠ *and*, *as well as* = *nicely in the same way as*)

- 6 What do the underlined words mean in the following sentences? Write *and*, *because*, *from the time* or *nicely in the same way as*.

- 1 I haven't seen her since I left university. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Since she is very busy, we seldom meet each other. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Judy does not dance as well as her sister does. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Judy likes dancing, singing as well as drawing. \_\_\_\_\_

- 7 Fill in the blanks with *since*, *as*, *because* or *because of*. There may be more than one correct answer for the blanks.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ it is raining, we have to stay at home.
- 2 I was absent \_\_\_\_\_ I caught a cold.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ we were late, we could not get a seat.
- 4 The picnic is cancelled \_\_\_\_\_ the bad weather.

▣ **Speaking**

- 8 **Pair Work** Do you think Leonardo da Vinci was a great inventor? Who do you think was the greatest inventor? Why?

**Example**

*I think Leonardo da Vinci was a great inventor because he was a pioneer in many areas. He ...*

# 8

## Good or Bad?

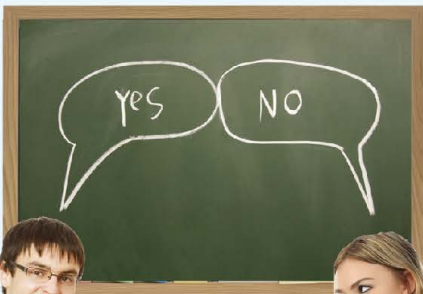
### Warm-up

1 What do you think of the inventions in the past ten years? Are they good or bad? Discuss with your partner.

### Example

A: I think some new inventions can improve our lives.

B: I disagree. Not all inventions help us. Think of weapons.



Andrew and Jenny are having a debate in English class.

### Listening

2 Listen to the debate. What is Andrew's opinion? What is Jenny's opinion?

Andrew's opinion:

---

---

Jenny's opinion:

---

---

3 Listen again and write A for Andrew or J for Jenny in the boxes.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 I think we should cut down on the number of new inventions. <input type="checkbox"/>         | 4 Cars make our life easier, don't you agree? <input type="checkbox"/>                                   |
| 2 Scientists need to quickly increase the number of new inventions. <input type="checkbox"/>   | 5 I don't think so. There are so many traffic jams. <input type="checkbox"/>                             |
| 3 Some inventions bring serious problems, for example, nuclear power. <input type="checkbox"/> | 6 This is why we need more new inventions to deal with problems like pollution. <input type="checkbox"/> |



## Creativity

4 Listen again. Are these sentences true or false?

- 1 Andrew thinks technology is useful in hospitals. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Jenny doesn't like technology at all. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Andrew is the last person to speak in the debate. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Jenny thinks that cars cause more than one problem. \_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Andrew thinks nuclear energy is good because it doesn't cost a lot to produce. \_\_\_\_\_

Function 陈述观点

5 Read the Key Expressions.

Key Expressions: Stating opinions

I support the position that scientists need to quickly increase the number of new inventions.

In my opinion, scientists should cut down on the number of new inventions. We do need new inventions, but having more inventions may not be a good thing.

I disagree. / I don't think so.

6 Your Turn Do you think dogs are people's best friends? Write down your ideas and discuss with a partner.

Example

*I think dogs are our best friends.  
They can look after our homes.*

7 Complete the conversation. Write the correct letter in each blank.

- a but      b In my opinion  
c I disagree / I don't think so  
d I support the position that

A: Bella, why don't you start?

B: OK. \_\_\_\_ dogs are people's best friends. Some people think that dogs are just pets, \_\_\_\_ I think they're much more than that.

C: \_\_\_\_\_. Some dogs are dangerous and they even bite their owners. \_\_\_\_\_, we should be careful when we keep dogs as pets.

B: \_\_\_\_\_. There must be a reason why a dog bites. As dog owners, they should find out the problem instead of blaming the dogs.

Speaking

8 Group Work Choose a topic and debate with another group.

- ♦ Mobile phones have more advantages than disadvantages.
- ♦ Playing computer games has more advantages than disadvantages.

Example

A: *I support the position that mobile phones have more advantages than disadvantages ...*

B: *I disagree ...*



# 9 Creative Minds

## Warm-up

- Have you or your friends invented anything? If so, what was it?
- Match the pictures with the names.
  - earmuffs
  - crayon holders
  - Wristies
  - popsicles



Cause		Effect
1 Frank left his juice outside and it became _____.	→	He _____ it and found that it was _____. He invented popsicles.
2 Chester's _____ were very _____ when he was ice-skating.	→	He tried to make earmuffs.
3 Cassidy's crayons were _____ and _____.	→	It was difficult to use them. She invented crayon holders.
4 Kathryn wanted to _____.	→	She invented Wristies.

## How did they think of that?

Kids are natural inventors. They often create amazing things from simple ideas. Here are a few examples that might make you wonder, "Why didn't I think of that?"

### Popsicles

Popsicles were invented by 11-year-old Frank Epperson in 1905. He forgot a drink of juice and left it with a stir stick in it outside on a cold night. The next day it was ice. Because of this he couldn't drink it any more, but he could eat it. It tasted good! These ice sticks became popular among kids at school in summer because they were delicious and helped them stay cool. More than a hundred years later, popsicles are still one of the best summer treats!

### Earmuffs

When 15-year-old Chester Greenwood was ice-skating in Farmington, Maine, in 1873, his ears were so cold that he couldn't bear it. Although he tried covering his head in a scarf, it was not comfortable. After some thinking, Greenwood made wire into two circles and asked his grandmother to sew fur on them. He then connected them with a steel headband and the first earmuffs were invented!

## Reading

- Read the Reading Help. Then read the text and complete the table on the right.

### Reading Help: Understanding cause and effect relationship

- Cause and effect shows you how something happens. The cause is the reason, and the effect is the thing that happens as a result.
- Words like *because*, *so*, *as* and *since* link cause and effect. These words are clues to identify cause and effect relationships.





## Creativity

**4** Which inventions are these sentences about? There is more than one answer for some sentences.

- 1 The inventor got the idea by accident.
- 2 It was invented by a girl.
- 3 The inventor made it with an adult's help.
- 4 The inventor started a company.
- 5 It was invented more than 140 years ago.
- 6 It is used in cold weather.

### Crayon holders

When 11-year-old Cassidy Goldstein needed crayons for a school project, she had a hard time because there were so many small or broken ones. She found some small clear plastic tubes at home. Although the tiny tubes were usually filled with water to keep flowers fresh, she found that they fit tightly around the crayons. She was now able to hold them easily. This is how she invented Crayon Holders.

### Wristies

While some kids just complain when snow gets in their mittens and their hands get wet, 10-year-old Kathryn Gregory decided to do something about it. She created the first pair of Wristies as she wanted to keep her wrists warm and dry. Wristies are long gloves with no fingers and they are worn under your mittens and coat. They can also be worn by themselves. They help you when you work in the cold because your hands stay warm while you use your fingers. She also started a business, with her parents' help, which she still runs today.

All these inventions have one thing in common — the kids were trying to solve problems in their lives. If they can do it, you can do it, too!

**5 Your Opinion** Which invention do you like best? Why do you think these kids can make these inventions?

### Speaking

**6 Pair Work** Think about the inventors from the passage. What are some examples of their creativity? Discuss with your partner.

### Example

**A:** *Well, Frank thought of a new way to use something he found by accident.*

**B:** *I agree. Even though it was cold, he thought people would like it in summer.*

**A:** *Good idea. I think we can also read books about them so that we can learn from them.*

**7 Pair Work** What do you want to invent? Why? Discuss with your partner.

### Example

**A:** *I want to invent a pen that can write fast when I dictate. That will help me a lot in exams.*

**B:** *Good idea. I...*

# Communication Workshop

## Reading

- 1 Read a student's writing about a famous Chinese computer scientist. Then read the sentences below and write *T* for true and *F* for false.



My favourite inventor is Wang Xuan. As we all know, Wang Xuan was one of the most famous computer scientists and inventors. He invented the technology for printing Chinese characters. As a result, he is known as "The Father of the Chinese Language Laser Typesetting".

Since there is a big difference between Chinese and English writing systems, laser typesetting for the Chinese language was a serious problem for scientists all over the world. For this reason, Wang Xuan decided to try to come up with a solution. In 1975, he began researching laser typesetting and electronic publishing systems for Chinese. He was not afraid to try new technology, and although he didn't have success all the time, he never gave up. He is believed to be the second most important developer in printing Chinese after Bi Sheng. Now, Wang Xuan's amazing invention is used all over the world, and it has been extremely helpful to the Chinese newspaper publishing industry.

Wang Xuan was not only a great modern scientist but also a great role model for many young people. His life story teaches us that a person should follow his own dream and try his best to make it come true.



- 1 \_\_\_ Wang Xuan started his research of laser typesetting in 1975.
- 2 \_\_\_ Wang Xuan invented lots of computer programmes for teaching Chinese.
- 3 \_\_\_ Wang Xuan found it easy to invent laser typesetting for the Chinese language.
- 4 \_\_\_ Wang Xuan was a great role model for many young people.



## Text Builder

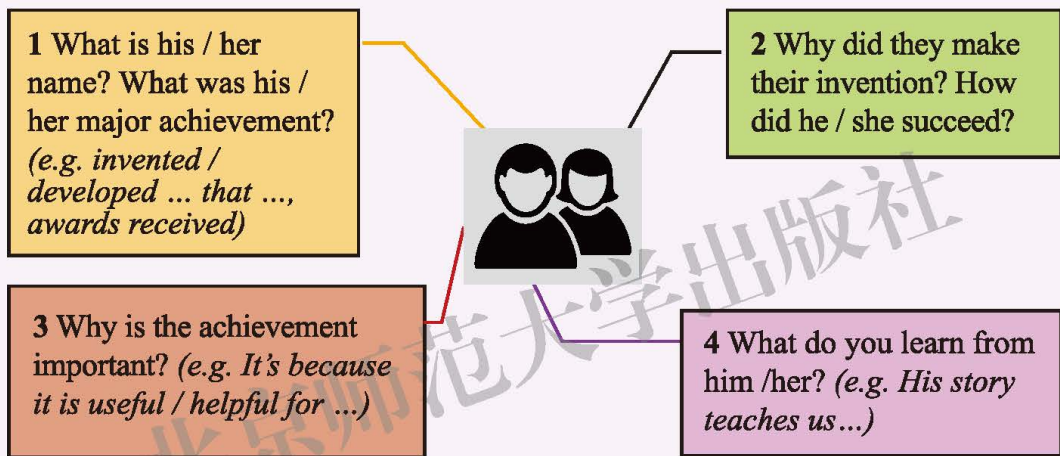
2 Read the text again. What is each paragraph about?

Paragraph 1: \_\_\_\_\_

Paragraph 2: \_\_\_\_\_

Paragraph 3: \_\_\_\_\_

3 Think of a scientist or an inventor that you admire. Answer the questions in the diagram below.



## Writing

4 Write about the scientist or inventor that you admire. Use your notes from Exercise 3 and the example on page 36 to help you.

My Favourite Scientist / Inventor

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

## Speaking

5 Tell the class about the scientist or inventor you admire.



The scientist / inventor that I admire the most is ...

## Check Your Progress

**A** Write the correct words in the blanks.

invention	work	technology
study	trouble	balloon

Great Chinese inventor, Zhuge Liang had a very poor childhood and he had to 1 \_\_\_\_\_ on his uncle's farm during the day and 2 \_\_\_\_\_ at night. Some think the steamed bun was his most important 3 \_\_\_\_\_, but he is more often remembered for military 4 \_\_\_\_\_ like the repeating crossbow (弩). Perhaps his most beautiful invention was a kind of hot-air 5 \_\_\_\_\_ called a Kongming lantern. He used it to signal to his army when he was in 6 \_\_\_\_\_ and needed help.

Vocabulary \_\_\_ / 6

**B** Read the sentences and circle the correct words.

- 7 He loves the beach because (**swim / swimming**) is fun.
- 8 Since (**study / studying**) is hard work, you need to take breaks.
- 9 She laughed because of (**the joke / to joke**).
- 10 As (**his cooking / he cooks**) is quite delicious, she has agreed to marry him.
- 11 She awoke because of (**her dream / she dreamed**).

**C** Write the correct words or phrase in the blanks. You can use some of them more than once.

since	so
because	because of

- 12 He became famous \_\_\_\_\_ his inventions.
- 13 The dog was punished \_\_\_\_\_ it made the room dirty.
- 14 \_\_\_\_\_ everyone was sick, the class was cancelled.
- 15 \_\_\_\_\_ they want to practise English, they should speak with foreign tourists.
- 16 Life is short and the world is wide, \_\_\_\_\_ the sooner you start learning, the better.

**D** Match the words with the opinions.

a I don't think so	b In my opinion
c so	d I support the position that

- 17 \_\_\_\_\_, technology is wonderful as it makes our life better.
- 18 \_\_\_\_\_ technology improves our life. For example, it is fast and easy to get information on the Internet.
- 19 \_\_\_\_\_. Sometimes online information is unreliable and it can cause confusion.
- 20 Rumours might be spread on the Internet, \_\_\_\_\_ don't believe everything you read.

Grammar \_\_\_ / 14





## Printing

- 1 How do people learn about new ideas and get knowledge today besides reading books?
- 2 Read the text and answer the questions.
  - 1 When and where did modern printing begin?
  - 2 Why wasn't printing done on cloth after the Han Dynasty?
  - 3 How did "movable type" work?
  - 4 Why is the spread of ideas and knowledge so fast nowadays?
- 3 Read the text again. Which do you prefer, reading the page or the screen? Why?

If you are reading this now, it is because these words are printed on this page. Could this happen 2,000 years ago? Well, you could have read some words, but the words wouldn't be printed by a machine on paper.



Modern printing began in China somewhere between 200 BC and 200 AD. A block of wood was carved (刻) so that the words or pictures stood out. Ink (墨) was put on the wood and then cloth was put on top of the wood. Later, during the Han Dynasty in 105

AD, papermaking was invented in China and printing was done mostly on paper after that.

Much later, a new method called "movable type" was invented. It used small blocks made of metal with characters or letters. The blocks could be moved around easily to make a whole page of printed text and it was much faster than carving a block of wood. Methods to do this were invented in China in 1040.



Later this method started to be used in Europe around 1439. Printing became much easier and faster and printing presses became popular everywhere.

Now, we send emails, texts and photos to each other. We can download books and click on links (链接) and read on our phones, tablets (书写板) and laptops (笔记本电脑). Ideas and knowledge are spreading faster than at any other time in history and the screen is replacing the page for many people.

### Learning through Practice

1 Look at the Key Words box on the Get Ready page. Underline the words you cannot remember and check the meaning. For example:

#### Key Words: Creativity

artist, inventor, musician,  
 photographer, writer  
 build, create, design, discover, draw,  
 paint, produce, think, work in a team,  
 write

2 Write your own example sentences for these words. They can help you remember the words better. For example:

- inventor — Thomas Edison was a great inventor.
- create — J.K. Rowling created the character Harry Potter.
- discovery — Isaac Newton made a lot of important scientific discoveries.



Choose five Key Words from Unit 1 to Unit 3. Write your own example sentences for these words.

### Unit Diary

How well can you do these?



Language and Skills

- I can understand the texts about Leonardo da Vinci and children's inventions.
- I can use conjunctions to show reasons and addition.
- I know how to state my opinion and debate ideas.
- I can understand cause and effect relationships in texts.
- I can write about a scientist or an inventor that I admire.

Culture

- I know the technological development of printing.

Study Skills

- I can write example sentences for new words.

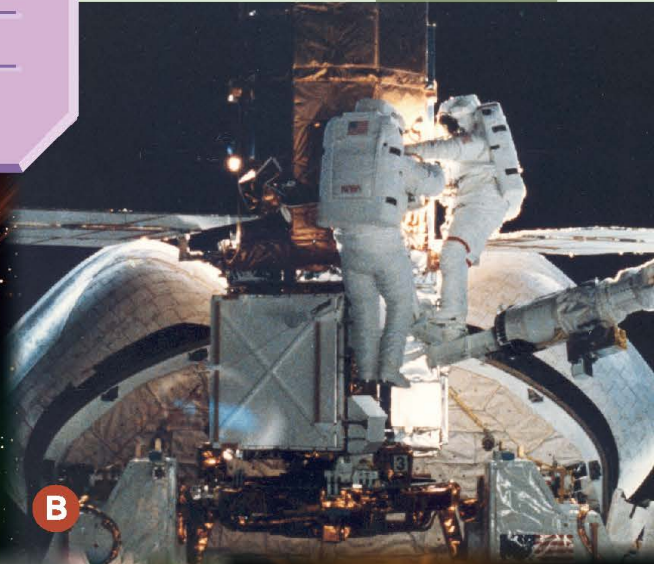


# Unit 4

- ▶ Talk about an astronaut's day.
- ▶ Read about life in space and a science fiction story.
- ▶ Listen to people talking about China's space programme.
- ▶ Write a letter to an astronaut.
- ▶ Learn about adverbial clauses.



A



B



C



D

# Space

## Getting Ready

1 How much do you know about space flight?



### Key Words: Space

astronaut, circle, international space station, land, lift off, manned, spacecraft, space flight, spaceship, unmanned

## Example

*Not many countries can send manned spacecraft into space.*

2 Answer these questions.

- 1 Why do people like to learn about stars and the planets?
- 2 Would you like to be an astronaut? Why or why not?



# 10 Life in Space



## Warm-up

- 1 What do you know about an astronaut's day? Share with your class.

### Example

- A:** *I think astronauts probably eat special food in space.*
- B:** *Since there's no gravity in space, astronauts float.*

- 2 List questions you have about an astronaut's day.

## Reading

- 3 Skim the text and tick the areas mentioned.

- eating and drinking in space
- exercising in space
- relaxing in space
- how to do science experiments in space

## Space Talk: An Astronaut's Day

Every morning you get up, wash your face, brush your teeth, eat breakfast and get ready for your day. These daily actions are so common that you don't think about them much. But what if you were in space? There is no gravity there, so weights are not as heavy as they are on Earth. When you drop something, it doesn't fall to the floor. It floats slowly away in the air. This means that astronauts can't just put down a tool. They need to tie it down. And how do astronauts drink? In space, water just breaks into small drops and hangs in the air.

Well, astronauts eat and drink differently in space. They have special plates so that their food doesn't float away. They use special bags for drinks so that the drink stays inside.

Sleep is also different in space. Astronauts tie themselves to the wall so that they don't float around when they are sleeping. Since they have to work hard, they need to get plenty of rest. The sun rises and sets so often that it can be confusing. The astronauts have alarms and sometimes music to wake them up.

Exercise is important for astronauts as well. Since there is no gravity and astronauts float instead of walking or running, their muscles become weak very quickly. They have to exercise on special machines every day so that this doesn't happen. No one wants to become ill in space and exercise helps them stay healthy.

However, it is not all hard work in space. When they are not doing science experiments, writing reports or exercising, there is a little time for fun. They watch movies, read the news and call family members and friends. The astronauts on the International Space Station can even connect to the Internet.



*Dr Maria Sherman talked to students about an astronaut's life in space at the Space Museum on Wednesday.*





4 Complete the table with the information from the text.

	Life in space	Reason
When they drop something	It _____.	There is _____ in space.
When they drink	They use _____.	This keeps the drink _____.
When they sleep	They _____.	They don't want to _____.

5 Read again and answer the questions.

- 1 Why do astronauts use alarms and music to wake them up?
- 2 How do astronauts exercise in space?
- 3 What work do astronauts do in space?
- 4 How do astronauts relax in space?

6 **Your Opinion** Do you think it is difficult to be an astronaut? Why?

▣ **Grammar** *so that / so ... that*

7 Complete the table with *purpose* or *result*.

**so that** is used to show \_\_\_\_\_

- 1 They have special plates *so that* their food doesn't float away.
- 2 They use special bags for drinks *so that* the drink stays inside.

**so ... that** is used to show \_\_\_\_\_

- 3 These daily actions are *so familiar that* you don't think about them much.
- 4 The sun rises and sets *so often that* it can be confusing.

⇒ **Grammar Summary 3, page 173.**

8 Choose the correct meaning of the sentences.

- 1 We woke up early so that we could catch the first train.
- 2 We woke up so early that we caught the first train. 
  - a We caught the first train because we woke up early.
  - b We woke up early because we wanted to catch the first train.
- 3 He read many books so that he could write well.
- 4 He read so many books that he wrote well. 
  - a He read many books so he wrote well.
  - b He wanted to write well, so he read many books.

9 Rewrite these sentences using *so ... that* or *so that*.

- 1 We cannot see clearly because it is so dark.
- 2 Peter ate many cakes, so he felt sick.
- 3 Joe studies hard because he wants to pass the test.
- 4 I cannot eat anymore because I am full.
- 5 They wanted to take photos so they brought their camera.

▣ **Speaking**

10 **Role-play** Work in pairs. Imagine you are interviewing Dr Maria Sherman about life in space.

**Example**

- A:** *Dr Sherman, do astronauts eat different food in space?*  
**B:** *Yes, they have special food...*

# 11

## The Amazing Shenzhou



### Warm-up

1 What do you know about the development of China's space programme?



#### Key Words: Space programme

astronaut, go into, launch, manned, satellite, send into, spacecraft, space station, unmanned

#### Example

A: I know that the first Chinese astronaut was Yang Liwei but I'm not sure when he went into space. Do you have any idea?

B: I think he went into space in 2003.



3 Read the Listening Help. Then listen and fill in the timeline.

### Listening

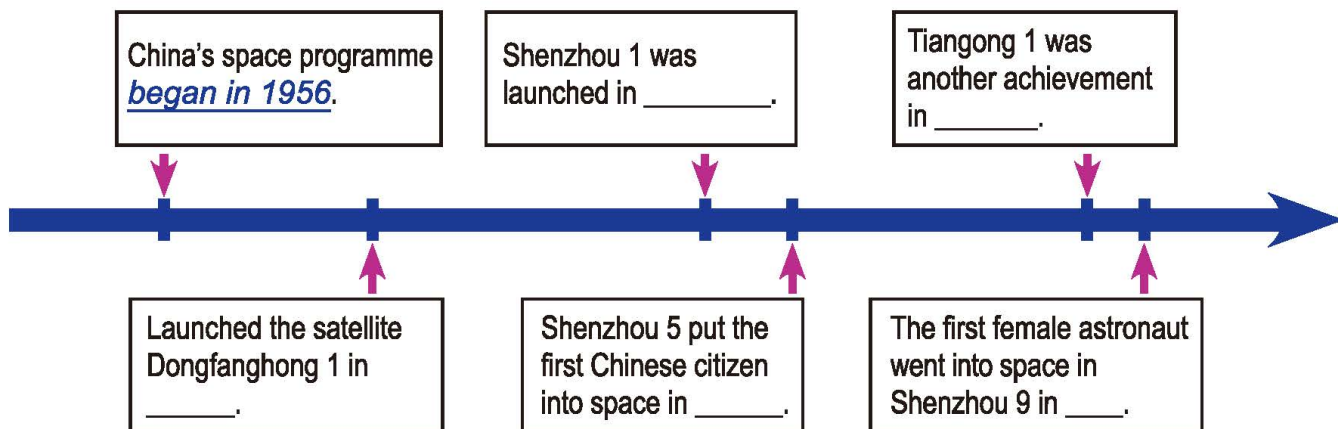


2 Listen to the radio programme. Tick the things mentioned.

- international development of the space programme
- the achievements of China's space programme
- the work of Chinese scientists in the space programme
- advice for future space scientists

#### Listening Help: Listening for numbers

- Listen and get the main idea of the conversation. Background information about the topic can help you make reasonable judgements.
- Listen carefully for years and dates.





4 Listen again and circle the correct answers.

- Which of the following is true about Dongfanghong 1?
  - It is a space station.
  - It carried astronauts into space.
  - It is a satellite.
- America started their space programme \_\_\_\_\_ years earlier than China.
  - 50
  - 16
  - 60
- When was Shenzhou 7 launched?
  - In 2005.
  - In 2006.
  - In 2008.

### Vocabulary

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb phrases.

make great achievements, send into, go into, start with, give up, put a lot of effort into

- She \_\_\_\_\_ the programme last year and it was a great success.
- The film did not start when we \_\_\_\_\_ the cinema.
- The city \_\_\_\_\_ in protecting the environment through their hard work.
- China's first astronaut \_\_\_\_\_ space in 2003.
- He doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ easily.
- You'd better \_\_\_\_\_ the beginner level course.

### Speaking

6 **Role-play** Imagine you are a Chinese scientist giving a speech to teenagers in America. Tell them about China's space programme.

#### Example

*Hello, everyone. My name is Wang Yi. It's very nice to be here. Today I want to share with you something about China's space programme.*

7 **Pair Work** What does it take to become an astronaut? Discuss with your partner.

#### Example

**A:** *Astronauts do experiments when they're in space so they need to be good at science. What do you think?*

**B:** *I agree. And they need to be strong and healthy so they don't get sick easily in space.*

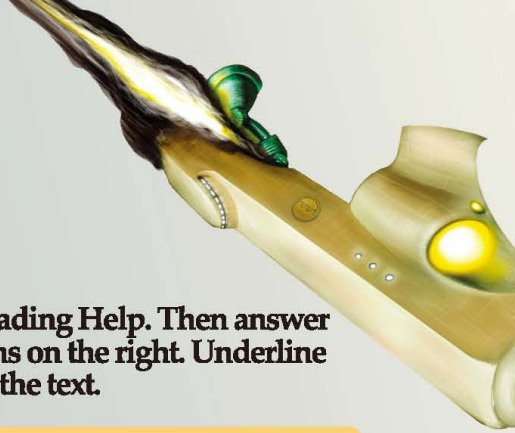
8 **Pair Work** Do you think you can become an astronaut? Discuss with your partner.

#### Example

**A:** *I think I can become an astronaut because I'm good at science and I'm fit. Do you think you can become an astronaut, Paul?*

**B:** *I'm good at science too but I'm not very fit. I may get sick easily in space, so I don't think I can become an astronaut.*

# 12 The Spaceship



## Warm-up

1 Read the questions and think about your answers. Then have a class vote.

Do you think:

- we will go to another planet?
- we will ever meet alien life?
- you will go into space?

## Reading

2 Look at the pictures. Then read the text and put the pictures in the correct order.

A boy and a dog were in a field. It was getting dark.

*A spaceship was trying to land on an unknown planet.*

The boy's name was Billy and his dog was called Oscar.

*In the spaceship, the captain was unhappy. Something was wrong. He sent a message to his own planet and got ready to land.*

"Come on!" called the boy. The dog was happy. He was wagging his tail. Billy gave the dog a biscuit. Suddenly, Billy and Oscar heard an unusual noise. Then they saw a light near some trees.

*Only the captain was alive in the spaceship. "I am alone, but I will find the strongest creature and control it. Then I will control the planet."*



Billy called Oscar again but he didn't come. Oscar ran to the trees.

*The captain got out of his spaceship. His spacesuit was uncomfortable. The air was fresh on this planet but he didn't take off his spacesuit. He saw huge green leaves everywhere. He climbed to the top of one of them and looked at the sky. It was dark blue.*

Oscar smelled something. Maybe it was good to eat. He picked up a metal object with his teeth.

*The captain saw a huge monster. He jumped onto its leg. He climbed up and went into the monster's head. "Now I can control you," he said.*



## Reading Help: Making Inferences

- Sometimes you have to make inferences and guess about what's happening in a story.
- First skim the passage.
- Then read carefully and find clues. Your logic and general knowledge will help you make good inferences.



- 1 What time of day did the story happen?
- 2 What object did Oscar pick up?
- 3 What kind of person was the captain?
- 4 Where did the captain go after looking at the sky?
- 5 Why did Oscar stop attacking Billy?



Billy found Oscar. He was moving his head strangely. Billy shouted “Come here!” But Oscar didn’t move. He just looked at Billy.

*The captain was looking at the boy, too. “Kill that creature,” he said.*

Oscar jumped at Billy and knocked him to the ground. “Oscar!” cried Billy. He was scared and hit Oscar on his head. Then something small fell out of Oscar’s ear and Oscar wagged his tail again.

*The small “thing” was on the ground. The unlucky captain was dead.*

The boy and the dog ran across the field and went home.



- 4 **Your Opinion** Do you think people on Earth will be controlled by creatures from other planets one day? Why?

### Speaking

- 5 **Your Turn** Imagine you see some aliens in a spaceship. You want to talk to them. What are you going to talk about? Here are some ideas. Add your own. Then discuss in small groups.

- ask them how they came to Earth
- ask them about life on their planet
- tell them about Earth and what life is like here

### Example

**A:** *I think I’ll ask them how they came to Earth.*

**B:** *That’s a good idea. / I don’t think it’s a good idea. I think it’s better to tell them where we are from.*

- 6 **Role-play** Role-play aliens and people on Earth with another group.

### Example

**People:** *Hello! Can you speak English?*

**Aliens:** *Yes, we can. Where are we?*

**People:** *You’re on Earth. How did you get here?*

# Communication Workshop

## Reading

### 1 Read Angela's letter and then answer the following questions.

Dear Liu Yang,

I'm Angela Liu, a middle school student in Beijing. My classmates and I were really excited to learn that you were not only the first Chinese woman in space but also the youngest astronaut from China. That makes me admire you very much.

Life at school is busy, but once I get home, I like reading books, especially books about physics and chemistry. However, my favourite books are about space. When I read them, I imagine that I'm an astronaut and I'm on a space mission. I want to be an astronaut in the future, too.

It must be very exciting to live in space. I wonder what your life was like there. What did it feel like to be in space? What did you see? What did you eat? How did you sleep? What did the stars look like from space?

My classmates and I admire you very much—you're such a good role model. All of my classmates have decided to work harder and do our best to realise our dreams, just like you.

I'm looking forward to your reply.

Yours faithfully,

*Angela Liu*



- 1 Why did Angela write a letter to Liu Yang?
- 2 Is Angela interested in space? How do you know?
- 3 What questions did Angela ask Liu Yang?
- 4 What would Angela like to be in the future?

## Text Builder

### 2 Match the parts of a letter and the examples.

- |             |                       |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| 1 Signature | a. Yours faithfully,  |
| 2 Greeting  | b. I'm Angela Liu ... |
| 3 Date      | c. Angela Liu         |
| 4 Closing   | d. June 18, 2012      |
| 5 Body      | e. Dear Liu Yang,     |



### Writing

- 3 The body of a letter usually includes a brief introduction (introducing yourself and your reason for writing the letter), and a mixture of information and questions. Imagine you are going to write a letter to your favourite astronaut. Write some notes in the boxes.

#### Introduction

Who are you? Why are you writing the letter?

---



---



---



---

#### Information

What do you already know about the astronaut? What are your ideas about space? Which sciences do you enjoy?

---



---



---



---

#### Questions

What questions do you want to ask the astronaut?

---



---

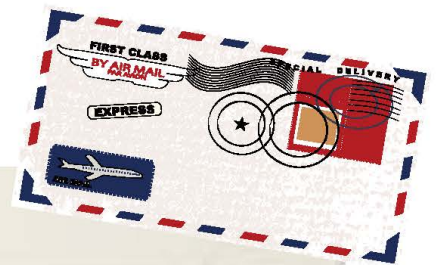
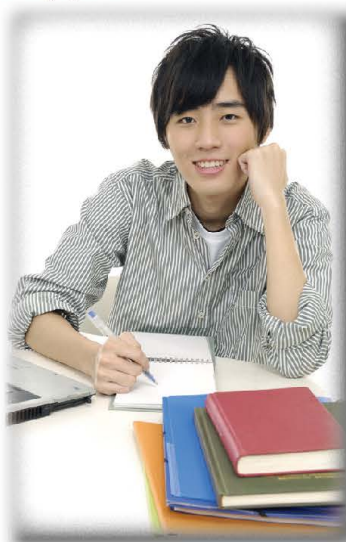


---



---

- 4 Write a letter to your favourite astronaut. Don't forget to add a date and signature. Use your notes from Exercise 3 and the example in Exercise 1 to help you.



Dear ...,

Yours faithfully,

## Check Your Progress

**A** Match the words with the pictures.

1 planet



2 satellite



3 astronaut



4 spacecraft



5 science experiment



6 space station



Vocabulary \_\_\_ / 6

**B** Complete the sentences using *so that*.

7 She is going to sleep early ...

\_\_\_\_\_

8 I am studying ...

\_\_\_\_\_

9 We are learning English ...

\_\_\_\_\_

10 He is buying food ...

\_\_\_\_\_

**C** Make sentences using *so ... that* and the words below.

astronauts / tired / fell asleep / bus  
→ *The astronauts were so tired that they fell asleep on the bus.*

11 smartphones / useful / everybody wants one

\_\_\_\_\_

12 it / hot / all the students went swimming

\_\_\_\_\_

13 homework / difficult / nobody could do it

\_\_\_\_\_

14 English / useful / everybody wants to learn it

\_\_\_\_\_

15 Putonghua / becoming / important / many Americans want to learn it

**D** Make sentences using *so that* or *so ... that* and the words below.

he / practise the violin / every day / can win / the competition.  
→ *He practises the violin every day so that he can win the competition.*

16 doctor / tell me to / eat less meat / can get fit

\_\_\_\_\_

17 apples / tasty / the children ate them all

\_\_\_\_\_

18 she / put / her favourite song / in the MP3 player / listen to it / every day

\_\_\_\_\_

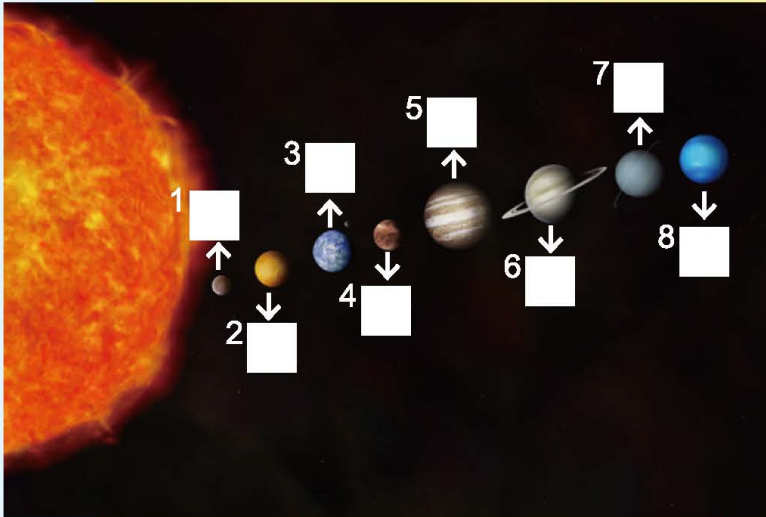
19 China's space technology / has advanced / quickly / the rest of the world is amazed

\_\_\_\_\_

Grammar \_\_\_ / 13



1 Do you know the planets of the solar system? Match the names with the planets.



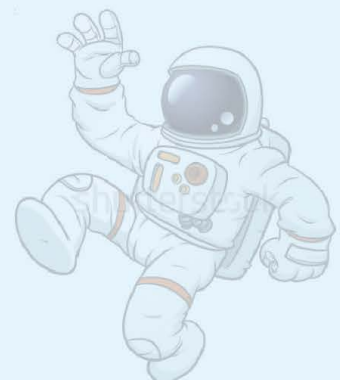
- a Neptune
- b Mars
- c Earth
- d Saturn
- e Jupiter
- f Uranus
- g Venus
- h Mercury

2 Read and answer these questions about space.

- 1 What is the name of the force holding us to Earth?
- 2 Which galaxy is Earth located in?
- 3 Is the sun a star or a planet?
- 4 Does the sun orbit Earth?
- 5 Have human beings ever set foot on Mars?
- 6 What do you call the place in space where everything is sucked in and cannot get out?

3 Read the information. One statement is false — which one?

- 1 Yang Liwei was the first Chinese citizen sent into space.
- 2 Liu Yang was China's first female astronaut to fly into space.
- 3 Neil Armstrong was the first American astronaut sent into space.
- 4 Sally Ride was the first American woman to fly into space.



### Study Groups

A study group can be useful when you are trying to learn new words and grammar, or to revise for a test because ...

- you can compare your class notes with other group members.
- you can ask the group members questions you didn't ask in class.
- working with other people can help you remember things better.
- studying in groups is more interesting.



#### How to study in groups:

- 1 Choose your group members and a group leader: \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Decide when and how long your group will study: \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Decide what you are going to study together:  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Stay focused on the topic.
- 5 Listen to what others say.
- 6 Don't just sit and chat! You can do that another time.



Form a study group and revise the language items from this unit together. Follow the suggestions and complete the blanks above.

### Unit Diary

How well can you do these?



Language and Skills	• I can understand the text about an astronaut's day and the story.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can use <i>so that</i> and <i>so ... that</i> .	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can listen for numbers with similar sounds.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can make inferences in reading.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can write a letter to my favourite astronaut.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Study Skills	• I can form a study group and do revision with them.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>



# Unit 5

- ▶ Talk about different kinds of books.
- ▶ Read a book extract and an article.
- ▶ Listen to a play.
- ▶ Write a story.
- ▶ Learn about relative clauses.



A

B

C

D



# Literature

## Getting Ready

1 Look at the Key Words. What kind of literature do you like?

**Key Words:** Types of literature  
fairytale, novel, play, poem,  
science fiction, short story, story

2 Talk with your partner about the following questions.

- 1 What kind of stories do you like best?
- 2 Do you like plays? Have you ever been in a play?
- 3 Who is your favourite writer? Why?

## Example

*Science fiction is my favourite.*



# 13 Anne of Green Gables



## Warm-up

1 What do you know about *Anne of Green Gables*?

## Reading

2 Skim the text. What is the story about?

### Meeting Anne

Matthew Cuthbert was on his way to Bright River on his horse and carriage. He was a quiet man who didn't speak much, especially to strangers. So he enjoyed the journey and the smell of the apple trees in silence. He reached Bright River but there was no sign of the 5:30 train which he'd come for. Matthew asked the station manager if it would come soon.

"It came half an hour ago," answered the manager. "There was one passenger. She's sitting over there."

"I don't understand. I'm not expecting a girl," said Matthew. "It's a boy that I've come for."

"Guess there's some mistake," he said. "Talk to the girl. She's very good at talking. That's for sure."

Matthew looked at her. She wore an old brown hat which covered two braids of very long, thick, red hair. Her face was small and thin with lots of freckles. Her big green eyes looked back at him.

Matthew began walking over but as soon as she saw him walking her way, she started the conversation.

"I suppose you're Mr Matthew Cuthbert of Green Gables?" she said in a clear, sweet voice. "I'm Anne. I'm so glad to see you. I was afraid you weren't coming and I was imagining all the things that might have happened to you. If you didn't come for me tonight, I made up my mind to go down the road to that cherry tree at the corner, climb up it and stay all night. I wouldn't be afraid and it would be lovely to sleep in a wild cherry tree all white at night, don't you think?"

This girl was different.

"I'm sorry I'm late," he said shyly. "Come on. Give me your bag."

As they rode home, Anne talked on and on. Normally, too much talking would make Matthew angry, but from Anne, he didn't mind. She apologised but Matthew didn't want her to stop.

"Oh, you can talk as much as you like. I don't mind," said Matthew.

"Oh, I'm so glad. I know you and I are going to get along fine."



## 3 Read the text and complete the table.

Time: _____	Characters: _____,
Place: _____	_____
Plot:	
- Matthew felt _____ to see Anne because he was waiting for a _____.	
- _____ started a conversation.	
- Matthew _____ with Anne.	

4 **Your Opinion** What kind of person is Anne? Find evidence from the text.

## Grammar 定语从句

## 5 Read the sentences below. Underline similar sentences in the text. Then complete the table.

*He was a quiet man who didn't speak much.*  
*She wore an old brown hat which covered two braids of very long, thick, red hair.*

**who / that refers to people**

I have a sister \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ is one year old.

The boy \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ helped the old granny on the road is my brother.

**which / that refers to things / animals**

I live in a flat \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ has two floors.

The meeting \_\_\_\_\_ / \_\_\_\_\_ you missed yesterday was very important.

## ⇒ Grammar Summary 4, page 173.

6 Read the sentences you underlined in the text. What do *who*, *that* and *which* refer to?

## Example

He was a quiet man who didn't speak much.

## 7 Fill in the blanks with the correct relative pronoun.

- This is the gift \_\_\_\_\_ I bought for mum.
- We took the train \_\_\_\_\_ arrived at 10.
- This is the boy \_\_\_\_\_ won the race.
- She married a young man \_\_\_\_\_ is a teacher.
- These are the children \_\_\_\_\_ Miss Brown teaches.

## 8 Join the sentences using a suitable relative pronoun.

- This is the hotel. We stayed in it during our holiday.
- I have a new friend. My mum likes her very much.
- I saw a girl. She had lovely blue eyes.
- My friend lives in a house. It is far away from town.
- Those are the men. I met them in the market.

## Speaking

9 **Role-play** Role-play the story in Exercise 2 in groups.

## Example

**Narrator:** *Matthew went to Bright River in his carriage. ...*

**Matthew:** *Will the train come soon?*

**Manager:** ...

**Anne:** ...

# 14 The Dark Room

## Warm-up

1 Have you read the story *The Blind Men and the Elephant*? Can you answer these questions?

- What was special about the men?
- Which part of the elephant did they touch?
- What did they think the elephant was like?



### Key Words: Animals

ear, leg, tail, trunk, tusk



### Key Words: Describing objects

flat, heavy, hose, iron, long, mat, rope, round, solid, thick, thin, tree

### Example

*The men in the story were blind. One of them touched the trunk of the elephant. It was long and had holes at the end. He thought the elephant was like a hose.*

## Listening

2 Read the beginning of the play. Why did the king ask the officers to come to the palace? What did he do?

Once upon a time there was a king. The king's officers argued about many things, even about small things. So one day, the king asked his officers to come to the palace. He covered the officers' eyes with cloth and led them into a dark room. The king's guards put each officer in a different spot. Then the king spoke.



3 Listen to the rest of the play. Order the pictures according to the officers' answers.

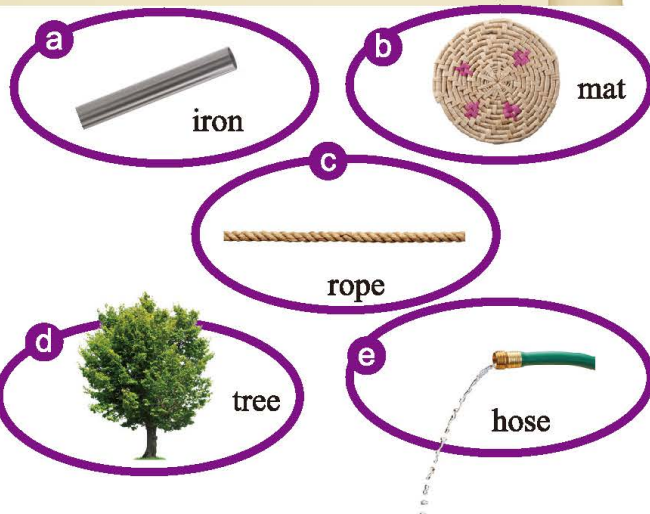
Officer 1 \_\_\_\_\_

Officer 2 \_\_\_\_\_

Officer 3 \_\_\_\_\_

Officer 4 \_\_\_\_\_

Officer 5 \_\_\_\_\_



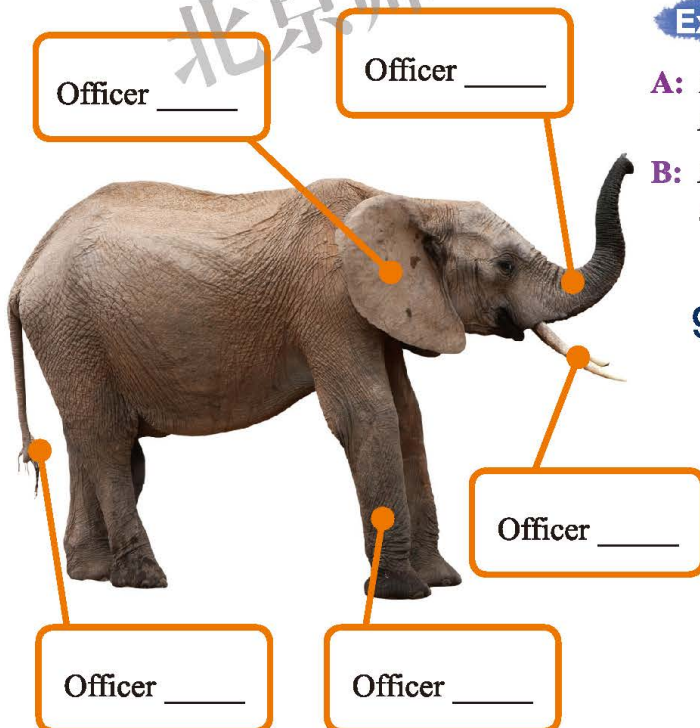


## Literature

- 4 Listen to the play again and complete the table with how the officers described the thing they touched.

Officer	Details
1	It's obviously a _____.
2	It's long but it's _____ and _____ with holes in the end. It's a _____.
3	It's _____ and heavy. It's quite clearly a _____.
4	It's _____ and _____. It's a floor mat.
5	It's a _____ of iron. It's _____, _____ and solid.

- 5 Look at the details in Exercise 4. Which part of the elephant did each officer touch? Write numbers.



- 6 **Your Opinion** What lesson did the king want the officers to learn?

Function 判断与评价 2

- 7 Read the Key Expressions.

Key Expressions: Judgement and evaluation

It's obviously a rope.  
It's quite clearly a tree.  
Interesting!  
They're both wrong, sir.  
It's not the way they say at all.

Speaking

- 8 **Group Work** Take turns closing your eyes and guessing objects by touch alone.

Example

- A:** *It's soft and it's made of cloth. It's clearly your jacket.*
- B:** *No. You're wrong. It's long and soft. It's quite clearly a rope.*

- 9 Act out the play in class.

Example

**Narrator:** *Once upon a time, there was a king.*

...

**The king:** *Now cover your eyes and the guards will lead you into a dark room.*

**Officer:** *It's... It's clearly a ...*

# 15 A Famous Writer

## Warm-up

- 1 Have you read the *Harry Potter* books or watched the films? Do you like them? Do you know anything about the writer?

### Example

*I've watched all Harry Potter films. I like them very much. I know the writer is J.K. Rowling. She's from...*



**J.K. Rowling**

## Reading

- 2 Skim the text and choose the best title.
  - a A Speech by J.K. Rowling
  - b J.K. Rowling and the *Harry Potter* Series
  - c The Road to Success

In her speech to Harvard students in 2008, J.K. Rowling said, "... seven years after my graduation day, I had failed on an epic scale." She went on to say that "by every usual standard, I was the biggest failure I knew."

It might surprise some readers to know which period of her life J.K. Rowling was talking about here. She is talking about her life when she was writing the first novel of the *Harry Potter* books. The idea came to her during a train ride in 1990. In December that year, her mother died. The next few years were difficult for her. In 1993, her first but short marriage ended. She had no job and had to raise her daughter alone. She didn't have much money and life was not easy. As she said in that same speech, "That period of my life was a dark one and I had no idea that there was going to be ... a kind of fairytale resolution."

As we all know now, the *Harry Potter* books went on to become extremely successful and also made J.K. Rowling very rich. So where does she think this success came from? She thinks it is a direct result of her early failures. As she went on to say, "Failure meant I stopped pretending to myself that I was anything other than what I was and began to direct all my energy into finishing the only work that really mattered to me ... I was set free."

Her *Harry Potter* series was completed with its final book in 2007. The books have become a very successful film series and three years after the final book was published, a *Harry Potter* theme park opened in the United States. She has written other books related to the *Harry Potter* series and her first book for adults was published in 2012. She has also remarried and now has three children.



**3** Read the Reading Help. Then read the text again. Put the events in the correct order. Then find out the year.

**Reading Help: Putting events in time order**

- Read the passage and note which events are mentioned.
- Pay attention to time indicators such as dates, years and words and phrases such as “then”, “before”, “later”.

- The *Harry Potter* theme park opened.
- J.K. Rowling’s mother died.
- J.K. Rowling separated from her husband.
- J.K. Rowling finished her last *Harry Potter* book.
- J.K. Rowling published her first book for adults.
- J.K. Rowling got the idea for *Harry Potter* books.

Order	Event	Year
1		
2		
3		
4		
5		
6		

**4 Your Opinion** How easy or difficult do you think it is to deal with failure the way J.K. Rowling did?

**Vocabulary**

**5** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the following phrases.

- go on
- have no idea
- other than
- related to

- I \_\_\_\_\_ what is going on here.
- I don't know any American people \_\_\_\_\_ you.
- Most of your mistakes are \_\_\_\_\_ your carelessness.
- After her early job as a singer, she \_\_\_\_\_ to become a song writer.

**Speaking**

**6 Role-play** Use the notes below to role-play an interview with J.K. Rowling. Add your own questions.

- reason for success
- idea for the *Harry Potter* books
- darkest period of her life
- works after the *Harry Potter* books
- family life now

**Example**

**A:** Welcome, J.K. Rowling. Can I ask you a few questions?

**B:** Sure. Please go ahead.

**A:** Why do you think *Harry Potter* is such a successful series?



# Communication Workshop

## ▶ Reading

1 Read Nancy's story and answer the questions below.



### A Story

Last Thursday was Daisy's birthday. I went to her home in the evening to celebrate. It was a fun night. Lots of her friends came and we had a great dinner together. We all enjoyed ourselves a lot and stayed until very late. When I got back home, it was already 11 pm. I was so tired that I fell asleep immediately and forgot to set the alarm for the next morning.

I had a really good sleep, but when I woke up the next day, it was already 10 am! I didn't know what to do, because I knew that I was very late for school. Then I quickly put on my uniform and rushed to school.

To my surprise, the school was closed and there were no students or teachers around. I was so confused. While I was trying to find out what happened, the school's guard came over to tell me that day was a school holiday! What a funny mistake!



- 1 What kind of story is it? Is it funny or serious?
- 2 When did this story happen?
- 3 Where was Nancy last Thursday night?
- 4 How did Nancy feel when she got up the next morning?
- 5 What was Nancy's mistake?

2 Read the story again and underline the following adjectives. What do these adjectives mean? Why do we need so many adjectives in a passage?

fun   great   tired   good   late   closed   confused   funny



## Text Builder

3 Read the text again and match the events with the three parts.

The Beginning

The Climax

The Ending

- A The guard told Nancy that it was a school holiday.
- B Nancy went to Daisy's home for her birthday party last Thursday and stayed till 11 pm.
- C Nancy realised that she was late for school when she got up. She rushed to school, but found that the school was closed.
- D Nancy was tired after the party and forgot to set her alarm clock when she got home.

## Writing

4 What kind of story are you going to write? Answer the following questions and make some notes.

- 1 What kind of story is it? (e.g. serious, sad, funny)
- 2 When did it happen? (Time)
- 3 Where did it happen? (Place)
- 4 Who was involved? (Characters)
- 5 What was the climax?
- 6 What was the ending?
- 7 How did you feel? (e.g. happy, worried, excited)

5 Write your story. Use your notes from Exercise 4 and the example in Exercise 1 to help you.

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

-----

## Check Your Progress

**A** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box.

separate    rush    celebrate  
apologise    raise

- 1 How do people \_\_\_\_\_ New Year in your country?
- 2 Jennifer was born in China, but she \_\_\_\_\_ in Australia.
- 3 We've got plenty of time, so there's no need to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 He \_\_\_\_\_ from his wife after 20 years of marriage.
- 5 I think he needs to \_\_\_\_\_ for not showing up on time.

Vocabulary \_\_\_ / 5

**B** Complete the sentences using *who* or *that* and the words below.

He is looking for a horse.  
It still wants to run a thousand miles.  
It lives in the well.  
He does magic.

- 6 There is the frog \_\_\_\_\_
- 7 There is the old horse \_\_\_\_\_
- 8 He is the man riding a mule \_\_\_\_\_
- 9 That is the monkey \_\_\_\_\_ His name is Monkey King.

**C** Write *who* or *that* in the blanks. Then put the sentences in order to make a story.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <p>a "No, we'd better not," Alan replied. "Without struggling to be born on its own, its wings will never be strong enough to fly. We have to let it follow nature's way."</p> <p>b One day, Tim found something 10 _____ he thought was interesting.</p> <p>c Alan explained, "It's a butterfly being born."</p> <p>d Alan ran over and saw that the insect 11 _____ Tim had found was the chrysalis (蝶蛹) of a caterpillar.</p> | <p>e Tim said, "Let's help it come out faster."</p> <p>f Tim called to his brother, "Hey Alan! Come over here. I found an insect 12 _____ seems to be hatching out of an egg!"</p> <p>g Once upon a time there were two boys — Tim and his big brother, Alan, 13 _____ lived on an island.</p> |
|--|--|

14 \_\_\_\_\_ 15 \_\_\_\_\_ 16 \_\_\_\_\_ 17 \_\_\_\_\_ 18 \_\_\_\_\_ 19 \_\_\_\_\_ 20 \_\_\_\_\_

Grammar \_\_\_ / 15





## Chinese and Greek Mythology

- 1 What Chinese myths have you heard of? What are they about?
- 2 Read the texts and answer the questions.
  - 1 What did the sun birds do every morning?
  - 2 Why was Dijun angry with Houyi?
  - 3 How did Helios try to protect Phaeton?
  - 4 How did Zeus stop the disaster?
- 3 Read the texts again. Which myth do you think is more interesting? Why?

### A Chinese Myth (神话): Houyi and the Suns



Long, long ago, there were ten sun birds. Every morning, one of them would rise from a resting spot near the eastern sea and fly across the sky.

But one day they decided to fly at the same time. It was a disaster (灾难). Lakes and rivers dried up, and fires started. People and animals collapsed from the heat. The emperor (皇帝) pleaded to Dijun, God of the Eastern Heaven and father of the sun birds, for help.

Dijun asked Houyi, the God of Archery, to frighten his sons.

Houyi tried to frighten the sun birds but they just laughed at him. So he shot and killed nine of the birds. The emperor ran to Houyi and stopped him, reminding him that if he shot the last bird, the world would be dark forever.



Houyi became a hero, but he could not get back into heaven because of Dijun's anger at him.

### A Greek Myth: Phaeton and the Chariot (战车) of the Sun

One day, long ago, Phaeton, the son of a princess, was told that his father was Helios, the sun god. He went to see Helios. Helios said he would grant (应允) Phaeton a wish.



Phaeton asked to drive Helios's sun chariot for one day. The chariot was extremely hot; the horses were difficult to control and they breathed out hot flames (火焰). Helios tried but he could not convince Phaeton to change his mind about his wish.

The next day, Helios covered Phaeton in magic oil to protect him from the heat of the chariot and gave him advice. Phaeton drove the chariot. First the chariot went too high, turning the world cold. Then it went too low, creating deserts and destroying human lives. Finally Zeus, king of the gods, struck down Phaeton with a lightning bolt (霹雳). Helios, in his sadness, left the world dark for days, before riding his chariot across the sky again.



### Spelling Long Words

Follow these steps:

1. Copy the word into your notebook.
2. Make sure you have spelled the word correctly.
3. Find the word in your dictionary, and check how many syllables it has.  
If you aren't sure, ask your teacher.
4. Write the word out with a space between each syllable. For example:  
com·mu·ni·ty.
5. Cover the word and write the syllables one by one.
6. Read the syllables aloud as you write them.



Find some words with three or more syllables from this unit. Use the above tips to help you remember the spellings. Then ask your partner to test you.



### Unit Diary

How well can you do these?



Language and Skills	• I can understand the extract from <i>Anne of Green Gables</i> and the text about J.K. Rowling.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can write sentences with relative pronouns.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can listen for specific details.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can put events in a text in the correct order.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can write a story.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Culture	• I know the similarities and differences between a Chinese myth and a Greek myth about the sun.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Study Skills	• I know how to spell long words.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>



- ▶ Talk about the qualities of a good role model.
- ▶ Read about Yao Ming and Steve Jobs.
- ▶ Listen to students talking about respected people.
- ▶ Write about a role model.
- ▶ Learn about infinitives.



# Role Models

## ▶ Getting Ready

- 1 Look at the Key Words. What do you think a role model should be like?



### Key Words: Role models

calm, clever, fair, helpful, kind, serious, smart, strong, successful, wise

### Example

*I think a role model should be helpful and kind.*

- 2 Think about your role models. Answer these questions.

- 1 What qualities do you think are most important for a role model?
- 2 Are you a role model to anyone? If so, does this change how you behave and how you see yourself?

# 16 Yao Ming

## Warm-up

1 What do you know about Yao Ming?

## Reading

2 Read the text. Circle the adjectives that can describe Yao Ming.

kind      modest      clever  
popular      hard-working

3 Answer the questions according to the passage.

- 1 What difficulties did Yao Ming face when he first played in the US?
- 2 How did Yao Ming win his teammates' respect?
- 3 What are the achievements of Yao Ming?

## SPORTS

### Basketball Star — Yao Ming

In 2002, Yao Ming decided to enter the NBA draft and was drafted to the Houston Rockets in June. He was the first international player without US college experience to be the Number 1 choice in the NBA draft. He soon grew to be a great player. In December of the same year, he was named Rookie of the Month. In 2004, Yao scored a career high of forty-one points in one game. In 2005, Yao Ming got the most votes in the NBA All-Star voting, which broke the record held by Michael Jordan.



Despite all Yao Ming's achievements, he had a challenging start. He had to deal with cultural differences and language difficulties to communicate with his teammates. But his personality and hard work helped him to win his teammates' and his fans' respect. He worked hard and was always trying to improve. The training paid off for him, and for his fans.

Although Yao Ming has achieved a lot, he has remained modest and has always valued his team members. After winning games, he always told the media that his teammates were great and he was proud to be one of the team.

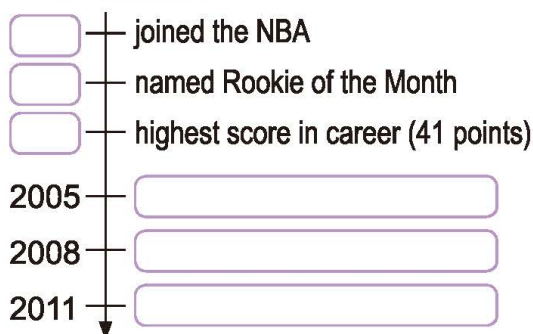
Yao Ming is also known for his charity work. He founded The Yao Ming Foundation in 2008, and he has built five schools in Sichuan and other areas.

Yao Ming has won the hearts of people all around the world. Although he decided to retire in 2011, Yao Ming will always be thought of as one of the world's best sports stars, not only for his basketball skills but also for his spirit.



## Role Models

4 Read the text again and complete the timeline.



5 **Your Opinion** What do you think Yao Ming's greatest achievement is?

Grammar 不定式

6 Read the sentences and find out more similar sentences in the text. Then work out rules to complete the table.

In 2002, Yao Ming decided **to enter** the NBA draft.

He had to deal with cultural differences and language difficulties **to communicate** with his teammates.

不定式作宾语和宾语补足语

He tried \_\_\_\_\_ the work in five minutes.  
(finish)

Daniel hoped \_\_\_\_\_ a job soon. (find)

I told you not \_\_\_\_\_ David. (wake up)

不定式作目的状语

They stopped \_\_\_\_\_ a rest. (have)

I came \_\_\_\_\_ you. (help)

⇒ Grammar Summary 5, page 173.

7 Fill in the blanks using the two verbs in brackets.

1 May has \_\_\_\_\_ to Shanghai in July. (decide / go)

2 John \_\_\_\_\_ to my home yesterday. (agree / come)

3 Jane \_\_\_\_\_ a nurse when she grows up. (want / be)

4 Ken is \_\_\_\_\_ French. (learn / speak)

5 Did your parents \_\_\_\_\_ to the picnic? (promise / come)

Speaking

8 **Pair Work** What do you do to achieve the following goals?

- improve your English
- prepare for tests / exams
- stay healthy and fit
- ...

Example

A: What do you do to improve your English?

B: I read English newspapers every day to improve my English.

9 **Group Work** Imagine that you want to be a role model. What do you need to do?

Example

A: I need to work hard and practise ping-pong every day.

B: I need to study foreign languages. I want to speak six languages at least.

C: ...

# 17 People in Our Lives

## Warm-up

1 What do you know about these people? Do you think they are good role models?

- Lei Feng
- Qian Xuesen
- Guo Mingyi
- Ren Changxia

## Example

*Ren Changxia was a policewoman. She worked hard to help a lot of people. I think she's a good role model.*



## Listening

2 Three students are talking about their role models. Listen to their presentations. Who talked about these things?

B = Bella      A = Adam      L = Lily

- 1 Although she doesn't work anymore, she is busy every day.
- 2 He always tells the truth.
- 3 He helps me when I'm feeling sad.
- 4 I think he's special, not strange.
- 5 She often rides her bike and goes hiking.
- 6 He is like a friend to me.





## Role Models

- 3 Read the Listening Help. Listen to the presentations. Write some key words or phrases about each person. Then circle the best answer.

**Listening Help: Identifying the speaker's views**

- Listen to how the speaker talks about the person's actions.
- Listen for key words or key phrases.  
e.g. *always smiles / doesn't get upset easily / a happy person*

1

→ Bella's Dad is **active / organised / caring**.

2

→ Ms Li is **active / organised / caring**.

3

→ Jack is **active / organised / caring**.

- 4 Listen again and answer the questions.

- 1 How did Bella's father help her with her worries?
- 2 Does Ms Li like children? How do you know?
- 3 How is Jack different from other teenagers?

**Speaking**

- 5 **Role-play** In groups, role-play interviews with Bella, Adam and Lily. The following questions may help you.

- Who is your role model?
- Why is this person your role model?
- What qualities does he / she have?
- What is he / she like?
- Would you please give some examples?

- 6 **Your Turn** Who is your role model? Why? What has he / she done?

**Example**

*My grandpa is my role model. Although he is in his seventies, he is willing to learn new things. Sometimes I have to ask for his help with my computer.*

- 7 **Group Work** Work in groups. Discuss what good role models should be like.

**Example**

*I think good role models should be hard-working. They should not give up easily.*



# 18 Steve Jobs

## Warm-up

- 1 Do you know anything about Steve Jobs? Who is he? What is his company's name?

### Example

*Steve Jobs invented many digital products. His company's name is Apple. He died in 2011.*

**Steve Jobs** (24 Feb. 1955 - 5 Oct. 2011) was a co-founder of Apple Inc., one of the most valuable companies in the world, and he invented many of the digital products that are part of everyday life for so many people today.

Steve Jobs's life was not without difficulties, however. He was given up soon after his birth and only met his birth mother and sister when he grew up. As a child, Steve was very smart but formal schooling didn't suit him. He went to college for a short time, but stopped his studies soon after because it was hard for his parents to afford it. He found a way to continue his education for another 18 months, although he never got a degree.

In 1976, Steve founded Apple Computer Inc. with two friends. The company became famous in a few years, but the sales of its first important product were not good. In 1985, Steve was fired from Apple. However, he didn't give up. Instead, he went on to set up another computer company and then a film company. The film company has won many Oscars and produced a number of successful films such as *Toy Story*, *WALL-E* and *Up*. After Steve returned to Apple in 1996, he changed many things in the company, which became an international success story.

Steve Jobs was a leader who knew how to make teams achieve great results but he also had another side. He became angry easily and was often impatient. He usually stated his opinions bluntly and would not put up with anything that he didn't think was perfect.

Although Steve wasn't a perfect man, he is recognised by many as the father of the digital revolution. His inventions and creativity have changed our way of life.

## Reading

- 2 Skim the text. Match the headings with the correct paragraphs.

- a his early life and education
- b his influence
- c his early work life
- d his character
- e who Steve Jobs was





## Role Models

**3** Read the Reading Help. Then read the text and complete the table about the writer's views on Steve Jobs.

### Reading Help: Identifying the main idea

- The first sentence of an article and in each paragraph can help you identify the main ideas.
- We can also look at the examples and reasons the writer uses to support his / her points.

Main ideas	Examples
Steve Jobs never gave up.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• tried to _____ even after his parents could not afford it</li> <li>• set up a _____ and _____ after being fired from Apple</li> </ul>
He was creative.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• _____ many digital products</li> <li>• _____ many things after his return to Apple</li> </ul>
He was successful.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• the film company won _____</li> <li>• Apple changed into _____ after his return</li> </ul>

Negative views	Examples / Reasons
Steve Jobs also had another side.	got angry easily, impatient
	_____
	would not _____

**4 Your Opinion** Would you like to run a large company like Apple? Why or why not?

### Vocabulary

**5** Match the phrasal verbs below.

- |         |                    |
|---------|--------------------|
| give up | a new business     |
| grow up | with their mistake |
| set up  | one's job          |
| put up  | in a village       |

### Speaking

**6 Group Work** Work in groups. Discuss whether Steve Jobs is a good role model for young people. Then have a debate with other groups.

### Example

**A:** *We support the position that Steve Jobs is a good role model for young people because he was a strong leader. He knew how to make teams achieve great results.*

**B:** *We disagree. We don't think Steve Jobs is a good role model for young people because ...*

# Communication Workshop

## Reading

1 Read Kylie's story and tick the answers to the question below.

### A Good Role Model

I'm the eldest child in my family, so I need to set a good example for my two little cousins. I learnt from my mother. She is my role model. Mum was also the eldest child in her family. She has two younger brothers. Mum was always calm, fair, and wise beyond her years. Even when Mum was only six years old, she used to share with her brothers. If there was one piece of cake, Mum would cut it into three pieces and let her brothers choose their pieces first. I do the same with my cousins.

Mum says that if I do the right things, my cousins will do the right things, too. I work hard at school, and I try to be helpful and kind all the time. As soon as I finish my homework, I always ask Grandma if I can help her with anything. Sometimes she wants me to help with the housework, but usually she just asks me to help my cousins with their homework.

Sometimes, there's a lot of pressure to be a good role model, but it makes me stronger. I guess I'm lucky to have Mum as an example. I hope that I can do as well as Mum, and that when my cousins grow up, they respect me as much as Mum's brothers respect her.



What does Kylie think a good role model should be?

- calm    helpful    kind    strong    lucky    fair

## Text Builder

2 Finish the table using information from Kylie's story.

Trait	hard-working	helpful	_____
Example	_____	_____	Cutting a cake into three pieces and letting the younger children choose first.
	_____	_____	
	_____	_____	





## Check Your Progress

**A** Read the passage below and answer the questions that follow.

My heroes are people who have struggled with terrible problems and tried their best to overcome them. One such man is Bill Smith. Bill had great difficulty in reading. It was so bad that he had a lot of problems in life and wasn't able to graduate from school. But he tried and finally found ways to overcome his problem. He started an organisation and shared his methods with other people who also suffered from this problem. The organisation has helped thousands of people all over the world. *Reading Magazine* named him among the Top 100 Teachers of the 20th century.

- 1 Are the writer's heroes perfect?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 What problem did Bill Smith have?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 How did Bill help other people?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 What kind of people does the writer choose as heroes?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**B** Write sentences beginning with *I went to* using words from the boxes.

school  
the library  
Hong Kong  
the beach

to borrow some books  
to study English  
to play in the sand  
to go shopping

*I went to school to study English.*

- 5 \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7 \_\_\_\_\_.

**C** Complete the following sentences with infinitives.

- 8 She went to the store \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9 They went to the mountains \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10 I went to the bank \_\_\_\_\_.
- 11 I went to the bookshop \_\_\_\_\_.

**D** Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs.

- 12 They decided \_\_\_\_\_ lunch together. (have)
- 13 I promise \_\_\_\_\_ the work this week. (finish)
- 14 The class planned \_\_\_\_\_ a party for their teacher. (hold)
- 15 I want \_\_\_\_\_ there early. (be)
- 16 Tom wrote an email \_\_\_\_\_ his friend the truth. (tell)

Reading \_\_\_ / 4

Grammar \_\_\_ / 12



# Fun Zone 3

# Famous People

1 Who said or wrote these things? Read the quotes and match them with the correct people.

- 1 "It's not just what it looks like and feels like. Design is how it works."
- 2 "It matters not what someone is born, but what they grow to be."
- 3 "Talent wins games, but teamwork and intelligence win championships."
- 4 "In spite of everything, I still believe that people are really good at heart."

- a J.K. Rowling      b Anne Frank  
c Michael Jordan      d Steve Jobs

2 What kind of famous person can you be? Do this questionnaire to find out!

Which of these sentences are true about you?

- 1 I like talking in class discussions.
- 2 I can read maps well and I have a good sense of direction.
- 3 I can remember songs very well.
- 4 I am good at sports.
- 5 I like maths and science.
- 6 I like making things with my hands.
- 7 I like reading and playing word games.
- 8 I am good at doing logic puzzles.
- 9 I am good at matching colours.
- 10 I am a good singer.

3 Do you know these famous people? Read and complete their profiles.

- Roger Federer      Indian  
Bill Gates      South African  
Mother Teresa      Swiss  
Nelson Mandela      American

1



Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Nationality: \_\_\_\_\_

Notable deeds:

He became his country's president and inspired peace and unity among his people.

2



Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Nationality: \_\_\_\_\_

Notable deeds:

She spent her life caring for the poor, the sick and the orphaned in India and many other countries.

3



Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Nationality: \_\_\_\_\_

Notable deeds:

He has won many tennis championships and is involved in charities in Africa.

4



Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Nationality: \_\_\_\_\_

Notable deeds:

He and his wife created the world's largest charitable foundation in 2000.

### Good Study Habits

Here are some tips for keeping good study habits. They can help you study more effectively.

#### Dos

- Plan your study time and stick to your timetable.
- Set goals for your study, e.g. memorise eight new words every day.
- Ask for help. Have a good dictionary and a good grammar book on your desk. Consult them when you have problems. You can also ask your friends for help when you get stuck.
- Work on the most difficult things first. They will use the most energy.

#### Don'ts

- Don't study too much at one time. Take a short break when you feel tired.
- Don't get distracted. Switch off the TV, the radio and anything that might distract your attention. Keep your study area tidy.

 Review the study habits listed above. Which of these study habits do you have? Write ✓ or × next to each.

### Unit Diary

How well can you do these?



Language and Skills	• I can understand the texts about Yao Ming and Steve Jobs.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can use infinitives to show purpose.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can understand speakers' views.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can identify writers' main ideas.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can write about my role model and what I've learned from him/her.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Study Skills	• I know how to keep good study habits.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>



- ▶ Talk about different kinds of journeys.
- ▶ Read about travel experiences.
- ▶ Listen to and appreciate a poem.
- ▶ Write about one of your journeys.
- ▶ Learn about articles.



# Journeys

## Getting Ready

- 1 Look at the Key Words. The people in the photos are on journeys. Where do you think they are?

### Key Words: Places

Africa, Antarctica, Asia, Atlantic Ocean, Australia, Europe, forest, Indian Ocean, mountain, Pacific Ocean, sea

### Example

*I think the people in Photo D are on a journey in Antarctica.*

- 2 Have you ever been on a long journey? Where did you go? How was it?

# 19 The Silk Road



## Warm-up

1 Do you know anything about the Silk Road? In groups, discuss the following questions:

- How long was the Silk Road?
- Which places did it go through?
- What was it used for?

## Reading

2 Skim the text and find the answers to the questions in Exercise 1.

3 Draw the following table in your notebook and complete it according to the text.

Place	In history	Present
Wuwei	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• an important city on the Silk Road</li><li>• ...</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• a modern city</li><li>• ...</li></ul>

My dad is very interested in history and the Silk Road has always fascinated him. He has told me many things about it. Although it's called the Silk Road, people traded much more than silk. The Silk Road went through Asia, the Middle East, North Africa and Europe. It was 6,500 km from Xi'an to Rome and it played an important role in the development of the world. My family got away for a holiday last summer and went to some famous places along the original road.

We started at Lanzhou and went on to Wuwei. Wuwei was a very important city on the Silk Road. It connected three main cities in the area. In ancient times, it was also a capital. Although it's now a modern city, you can get a sense of history when you visit it. We saw lots of very old stone monuments and people there were very proud of their city's long history.

The next stop was Jiayuguan. It's on the edge of the desert, and was an important place on the Silk Road. It was a busy city with a lot of people coming and going. Even today, it's a city that many business people travel through. An important part of the Great Wall was also built here.

After that, we went on to Yumenguan. I first found out about Yumenguan in the famous poem written by Wang Zhihuan. It was in the Gobi Desert and was the only connection between Central Asia and China. I wonder how people ever made it through the hot desert so long ago.

Finally, we arrived in Dunhuang, a city with long history and great artwork. It was influenced by many different cultures over time. Now, it's a major place of interest in north-west China.

This trip wasn't just a scenic journey. It helped me understand the history of the area and see how people from different places influenced each other in many ways.



## Journeys

4 Read the text and complete the sentences using the names of places.

- 1 You can find the Great Wall in \_\_\_\_.
- 2 \_\_\_\_ used to be a capital city.
- 3 You can see the influence of different cultures in \_\_\_\_.
- 4 \_\_\_\_ appeared in Wang Zhihuan's poem.

5 **Your Opinion** Do you enjoy history? Do you like to take a trip like this?

▣ **Vocabulary**

6 Complete the following sentences with the phrasal verbs.

play an important role, go through, get away, find out

- 1 His personality \_\_\_\_\_ in his business success.
- 2 Can you \_\_\_\_\_ what time the meeting starts?
- 3 The car broke when it \_\_\_\_\_ the forest.
- 4 We're hoping to \_\_\_\_\_ for a few days.

▣ **Grammar** 冠词

7 Complete the following sentences with *a, an, the* or *X*.

***a, an, the, X***

It was \_\_\_\_ important city on \_\_\_\_ Silk Road.

\_\_\_\_ important part of \_\_\_\_ Great Wall was also built here.

My dad is very interested in \_\_\_\_ history.

It was \_\_\_\_ only connection between \_\_\_\_ Central Asia and \_\_\_\_ China.

⇒ **Grammar Summary 6, page 174.**

8 Complete the text with the correct articles. If no articles are needed, put an *X*.

My family is going to 1 \_\_\_\_ Macau for a holiday next week. We will stay at 2 \_\_\_\_ new hotel called 3 \_\_\_\_ Grand Lisboa Hotel. On 4 \_\_\_\_ first day we will go to 5 \_\_\_\_ famous museum called 6 \_\_\_\_ Grand Prix Museum. I look forward to visiting 7 \_\_\_\_\_ museum because I love racing cars. My sister Mary doesn't like racing cars. She wants to visit 8 \_\_\_\_ Macau Science Centre so we will go there on 9 \_\_\_\_ second day. I think it will be 10 \_\_\_\_ interesting place to visit.

▣ **Speaking**

9 **Your Turn** Think about a memorable trip that you went on. Write a few sentences about:

- Where did you go?
- Did you visit any special places?
- Did you meet anyone special?
- Did you taste any special dishes?

**Example**

*I went to Xi'an last year. I visited lots of historical buildings during the trip. I also tried some very tasty noodles.*



# 20 Life Is a Journey

## Warm-up

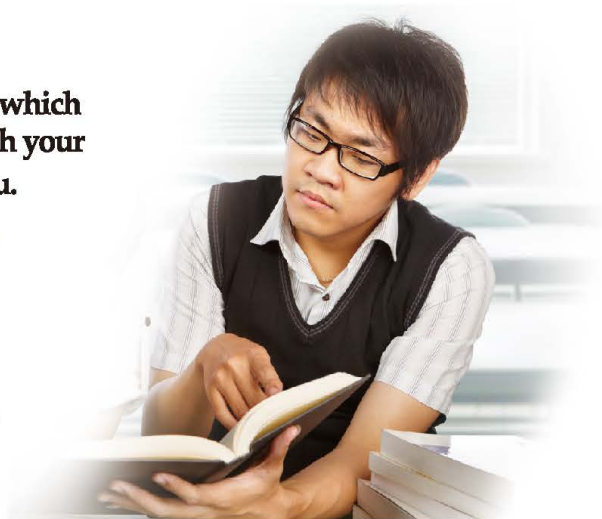
- 1 Life is often compared to a journey. In which ways is life like a journey? Discuss with your partner. Use the Key Words to help you.

### Key Words: Life

choice, despair, difficulties, enjoy, failure, future, happiness, hope, success, ups and downs, work hard

### Example

*I've never thought about it. But I think life is a journey. There are a lot of ups and downs in both.*



## Life Is a Journey

*Anonymous*

Life is a journey.

The path goes left and right.

There is hope and happiness,

Despair and difficulties.

There are so many choices along the way.

Which one is the best for me?

Each creates a different future.

If I compare myself to others,

It really doesn't help.

Their life isn't mine.

And I have to make up my own mind.

Success or failure may come.

But worrying isn't the answer.

I just need to enjoy the journey,

And never give up.

## Reading

- 2 Read the poem. What could another title for the poem be?

- a Enjoying the Journey of Life
- b Going on a Trip
- c The Past and the Future
- d My Choices

- 3 Read the Reading Help. Then complete the table about the poem on page 81.

### Reading Help: Poem appreciation

- The poet's name can be written at the top or bottom. If the poet's name is unknown, we write "Anonymous".
- Poems are sometimes divided up into verses / stanzas, which are a group of lines.
- Poets sometimes use metaphors (comparing two things without using *like* and *as*) to describe things.



## Journeys

Title	
Writer	
Number of verses	
Number of lines in each verse	
Metaphor	

4 Choose the summary for each verse. Write 1—4.

- I need to make my own decisions.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- Our choices lead to different futures.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- It's best not to worry and keep working hard. \_\_\_\_\_
- Life can be compared to a journey.  
\_\_\_\_\_

5 Answer the questions about the poem.

- Read Verse 1. What examples does the writer give to compare life to a journey?
- Read Verse 2. Which of the following describes how the writer feels?
  - happy, excited
  - confused, unsure
  - sad, hopeless
- Read Verse 3. What does the writer talk about?
  - relationships with others
  - relationship with oneself
  - both
- Read Verse 4. What decision does the writer make?

6 Read the poem aloud after listening to the recording.

7 **Your Opinion** Do you agree with the writer? Why or why not?

### Speaking

8 **Pair Work** Use some metaphors to describe life. Why do you think life is like ...? You can use the following ideas or think of your own ideas.

- riding a bicycle
- a game
- a movie
- climbing a mountain
- a race
- a book
- a box of chocolates
- a painting

### Example

**A:** *I think life is like riding a bicycle because it's hard to learn but once you learn, you never forget. Then you can go anywhere.*

**B:** *I think life is a race. We have to keep running until we get to the finishing line.*

9 **Your Turn** Work in groups or in pairs. Use your ideas in Exercise 8 to write a short poem about life.



### Warm-up

1 Are these words related to the North Pole or South Pole? Write *NP* or *SP*.

Antarctica \_\_\_\_\_ Arctic \_\_\_\_\_ polar bears \_\_\_\_\_ penguins \_\_\_\_\_

2 What do you know about the South Pole? What is the weather like? Why are the journeys to the South Pole difficult? What supplies are needed for a journey like this?

### Reading

3 Scan the text. Where is the writer? How many days has he spent there? Who is with him?

"It's Day 45 of our expedition to the South Pole. This must be one of the most difficult days I've ever had," I thought with a heavy breath as I walked against the wind and snow in sub-zero temperatures. We're finally just a few miles away from our destination.

This whole trip has been very difficult. We've been walking around 12 hours a day and I'm very tired. However, I can't complain because it's nothing compared to the journey of Roald Amundsen. Whenever I almost gave up, I tried to think of how he overcame his difficulties more than 100 years ago.

This journey has been special even though at times it felt like it was never going to end. First, it's not easy to move over the white snow and ice that feels like an ocean. Sometimes it's white everywhere and it's hard to see more than a few metres ahead because of storms. Luckily, we have planned the route well.

Another challenge of the journey is preparing food. For example, we have to eat any hot food fast as it gets cold quickly. Sometimes, we just have some nuts and sweets since there's no time to stop for a proper meal. Even so, we've always made sure that we eat the right food so that we can continue our journey with enough energy.

I think the hardest part is to protect our feet. It would be awful if we couldn't get to the pole because of injuries. Our team doctor has always treated our injuries well and has kept us in good shape.

It will feel wonderful to be finally standing at the South Pole. This expedition has taught me that we need to overcome all kinds of difficulties before we can succeed and that we should never give up.







4 Read the Reading Help. Write the topic sentences of paragraphs 2 – 5. Then decide which sentence supports the topic sentence.

### Reading Help: Identifying the topic sentences

- The topic sentence is usually, but not always, found at the beginning of a paragraph.
- The topic sentence is usually supported with specific information and examples.

2: \_\_\_\_\_

- a This trip is a wonderful experience for me.
- b Sometimes I can't get enough sleep.
- c Roald Amundsen was a great explorer.

3: \_\_\_\_\_

- a It is easy to get lost.
- b The ice looks so nice under the sun.
- c I planned this trip for three years.

4: \_\_\_\_\_

- a We stopped at different places during the expedition.
- b We brought a lot of warm clothes.
- c Usually we cook simple hot meals.

5: \_\_\_\_\_

- a The sharp ice can hurt our feet easily.
- b We wear hats to protect our heads.
- c It is our doctor's first trip with us.

5 Read the text again and complete the report.

**Destination:** \_\_\_\_\_

**Difficulties:**

- felt \_\_\_\_\_ because they walked 12 hours a day in \_\_\_\_\_ temperatures
- hard to \_\_\_\_\_ snow and hard to \_\_\_\_\_ because of storms
- food got \_\_\_\_\_ because it was so cold, sometimes there was not enough \_\_\_\_\_ to eat properly
- need to protect your \_\_\_\_\_

**What I've learned:**

have to \_\_\_\_\_ all kinds of difficulties to succeed, never \_\_\_\_\_

6 **Your Opinion** Would you like to take a journey like this one day? Why or why not?

### Speaking

7 **Group Work** Give a presentation about the journey to your class.

#### Example

- A: Expedition to the South Pole is difficult. You have to walk for 12 hours a day ...
- B: It's very cold and there is snow everywhere ...
- C: To finish, we have learned that ...

# Communication Workshop

## Reading

- 1 Read about Jenny's journey. Then match the correct paragraphs and the pictures below.

### My Shanghai Journey

- (1) Last summer, I went to Shanghai with my parents. It was our first time. Shanghai is a large and modern city but it also has lots of historical places. I was really excited to have the chance to see them.
- (2) We stayed there for two days. On the first day, we went to Nanjing Road where there were lots of busy shopping malls. We also visited some places in the city centre. In the evening, we went to the Bund – a well-known waterfront area on the Huangpu River. We also went to the Oriental Pearl Tower, which is a landmark in Pudong and one of the world's tallest TV towers.
- (3) On the second day, we visited Xintiandi, where we saw lots of modern shops and restaurants in traditional shikumen-style houses. The old buildings there look very interesting. The scenery was really amazing!
- (4) Our stay in Shanghai was an unforgettable experience. I liked both the new and the old Shanghai. Two days was a bit short. I hope I can go to Shanghai again sometime in the future.

a )



b )



- 2 Look for the adjectives in Jenny's writing that have the following meanings.

connected with the past (para. 1)

\_\_\_\_\_

famous, known about by a lot of people (para. 2)

\_\_\_\_\_

following ideas and methods that have existed for a long time (para. 3)

\_\_\_\_\_

surprisingly good, great (para. 3)

\_\_\_\_\_



### Text Builder

- 3 Read Jenny's writing again. What places and things does she talk about and how does she describe them? Complete the table below.

Places	Description
Nanjing Road	lots of _____ shopping malls
the Bund	a _____ waterfront area
Oriental Pearl Tower	a landmark, one of the world's _____ towers
Xintiandi	lots of _____ shops and restaurants in _____ shikumen-style houses, _____ scenery

### Writing

- 4 Think about a journey you have been on and write a list of adjectives to describe what you saw during your journey. Make some notes about your journey using the following table.

#### Example

*historical, new, modern, old, famous, special, amazing, ancient, traditional, unforgettable, well-known*

Places	
Scenery	
Buildings	
People	
Food	

- 5 Write about your journey using your notes.



#### My Journey

_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

## Check Your Progress

**A** Draw lines to match the words on the left with the appropriate words on the right.

- |                        |                 |
|------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 the capital city     | ice cream       |
| 2 a province           | the Great Wall  |
| 3 a desert             | the Gobi Desert |
| 4 a dessert            | Beijing         |
| 5 a tourist attraction | Gansu           |

Vocabulary \_\_\_ / 5

**B** Read the following passage and write *a*, *an* or *the* in the blanks. Then answer the following questions.

### Inner Journey

A wise man told me the most important journey I would ever make in life was **6** \_\_\_ journey into myself. More important than where I would go was what I would learn about my true self. The best question, he told me, to ask myself throughout my life was "Who am I?" As I journeyed through life, **7** \_\_\_ answer has changed. I was, at first, **8** \_\_\_ child, **9** \_\_\_ son, then **10** \_\_\_ student, **11** \_\_\_ class president, **12** \_\_\_ employee and now, **13** \_\_\_ boss! Finally, I am discovering that these are all just "on the surface", and who I really am is much deeper and more meaningful!

**14** What question did the wise man say was the best?

\_\_\_\_\_

**15** What is your answer to this question for yourself?

\_\_\_\_\_

**C** Complete the following sentences using *a*, *an* or *the*.

**16** I just booked \_\_\_ flight. \_\_\_ plane leaves tomorrow night.

**17** Where is \_\_\_\_\_ Gobi Desert?

**18** \_\_\_ new teacher will join our school.

**19** \_\_\_ elephant is running in the street!

**20** What's \_\_\_\_\_ biggest country in the world?

**21** I baked \_\_\_ cake for your birthday. \_\_\_\_\_ cake looks good!

**22** I read \_\_\_\_\_ interesting story last night.

**D** Underline and correct the errors in the following sentences. Then write the correct sentences.

*Dalian is the beautiful city.*

*Dalian is a beautiful city.*

**23** I'd like to buy a biggest one.

\_\_\_\_\_

**24** He goes there every day after the lunch.

\_\_\_\_\_

**25** She will study at a University of Hong Kong.

\_\_\_\_\_

**26** He dropped a egg.

\_\_\_\_\_

**27** What is a meaning of life?

\_\_\_\_\_

**28** This is an end of the unit.

\_\_\_\_\_

Grammar \_\_\_ / 23





## Journey to the West

1 What do you know about the story “Journey to the West”?

2 Read the text and answer the questions.

- 1 What did Monkey King do in heaven?
- 2 What did Monkey King do for Xuanzang?
- 3 What are some similarities between Monkey King and Pigsy?
- 4 Why did Xuanzang go with the demons?

3 Read the text again. Is the journey easy or difficult? Why?

Sun Wukong, or Monkey King, was a monkey who learned to be very good at magic and fighting. He was given a job in heaven guarding a peach garden, but he was very naughty, so Buddha imprisoned (关押) him under a mountain.

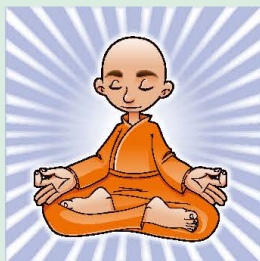


Buddha sent a monk, Xuanzang, to India to get some books to teach people how to live better lives. Guanyin found Monkey and freed him so that he could go along on the journey to India and protect Xuanzang. Monkey King tried to be good, but broke his promise.

Then, Xuanzang and Monkey King met Zhu Bajie, or Pigsy, who also used to have a good job in heaven, but behaved badly and was changed into a pig-man. Pigsy agreed to come along with them. Pigsy was very greedy (贪吃的) and lazy.

Next, they met a water monster called Sha Wujing, or Sandy. Monkey King and Pigsy fought Sandy. After a long fight they discovered Sandy was from heaven, too. Sandy joined them. Unlike Monkey King and Pigsy, Sandy was quiet and reliable.

Along the way, the travellers met powerful and dangerous demons (妖怪), who wanted to eat Xuanzang because they thought it would make them live forever. Many of the demons could change themselves to look nice and friendly, so they often tricked Xuanzang into going with them. However, Monkey, Sandy and Pigsy always rescued Xuanzang.



Many years later, the four reached India and got the special books, which they took back to China.

### Brainstorming and Editing

#### Brainstorming ideas

You can use 5W1H questions to brainstorm ideas for writing. For example:

Topic: My journey to London	
5W1H	Examples
When	<u>When</u> did I go to London?
Who	<u>Who</u> went with me?
Where	<u>Where</u> did I go?
What	<u>What</u> were the special things I saw during my journey?
How	<u>How</u> did I feel during the journey?
Why	<u>Why</u> did I feel this way?



Tell your partner what other ways of brainstorming ideas you have tried before.

#### Editing

You can use this checklist to check your writing.

#### Checklist

- ✓ Are my ideas / paragraphs well connected?
- ✓ Is there one main idea in each paragraph?
- ✓ Did I spell the words correctly?
- ✓ Did I use the correct tenses?
- ✓ Did I use the appropriate verbs / adjectives / adverbs?
- ✓ Did I use the correct punctuation?

### Unit Diary

How well can you do these?



Language and Skills	• I can understand the texts about the Silk Road and an expedition to the South Pole.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I know how to use the articles <i>a</i> , <i>an</i> and <i>the</i> .	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I know the special features of poems.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can identify the topic sentences of a text.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can write about a journey I have been on.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Culture	• I can understand the text about "Journey to the West".	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Study Skills	• I know how to brainstorm ideas for writing and use a checklist to check my writing.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>



- ▶ Talk about scientific discoveries.
- ▶ Read about important discoveries and read an experiment report.
- ▶ Listen to a speech.
- ▶ Write about discovery or experience.
- ▶ Learn about conditionals.



# Discoveries

## ▶ Getting Ready

- 1 Look at the photos. What are the people doing? What do you think they are trying to discover?



### Key Words: Discoveries

chemistry, do experiments, electricity, health, lab, machine, observe, physics, research, space, technology

## Example

*I think the person in Photo A is observing the stars. Maybe he is trying to discover a new star.*

- 2 Think about discoveries you know.
  - 1 Can you name some famous discoveries?
  - 2 Among these discoveries, which do you think are the most important ones?

### Warm-up

1 What discovery do you think is the most interesting one?

#### Example

*I think X-rays are the most interesting discovery.*

### Reading

2 Skim the text. Which discoveries does it discuss?

What discoveries have influenced our lives most? Here's a list. Do you have any to add?

#### Antibiotics

Three centuries ago, many children died very young because of different diseases. Now with antibiotics, a lot of these diseases can be cured easily. However, we need to be careful about how we use antibiotics because if we do not use them correctly, they can cause serious health problems.

#### DNA

DNA is the building block of life and was discovered in 1869. Over many years, scientists have slowly learned more and more about DNA. In 1928, scientists discovered that DNA passed on certain characteristics from parents to children. In 1953, the famous structure of DNA was discovered. Now, scientists have a map of our DNA that tells them a great deal about what we get from our parents. If we learn more about DNA, we will be able to treat more diseases.

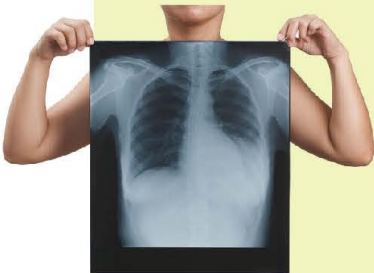
#### X-rays

Wilhelm Roentgen, a German scientist, was the first to study and name X-rays in 1895 and in 1901, he was awarded the first-ever Nobel Prize in Physics for this discovery. X-rays go right through some things, like skin and wood, but are stopped by others, such as bones or metal. This means that they can be used to see broken bones in people or things inside suitcases. With X-ray machines doctors can treat broken bones much more easily.

If we discover more about the human body, we can help people live longer and better lives.

3 When did these things happen? Write the correct years.

Event	Year
The structure of DNA was discovered.	
Wilhelm Roentgen received the Nobel Prize.	
Scientists discovered DNA.	





## Discoveries

## 4 Read the text again. Answer the questions below.

- 1 What effect do antibiotics have on how long people live?
- 2 Scientists discovered DNA in 1869. How many years later did they discover its structure?
- 3 What can scientists know from the map of our DNA?
- 4 Who are X-rays useful for? How do you know?

## Grammar 条件状语从句

## 5 Read the sentences from the text. Then try to find out the rules and complete the table.

If we **do not use** them correctly, they **can cause** serious health problems.

If we **learn** more about DNA, we **will be** able to treat more diseases.

If we **discover** more about the human body, we **can help** people live longer and better lives.

从句	主句
If I _____ (have) time,	I _____ (visit) my grandparents.
If you _____ (have) any questions,	you _____ (ask) Kim for help.

⇒ Grammar Summary 7, page 175.

## 6 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 If you \_\_\_\_\_ (go) to bed late, you \_\_\_\_\_ (feel) tired the next day.
- 2 You \_\_\_\_\_ (join) the Chess Club if you \_\_\_\_\_ (be) interested in it.
- 3 We \_\_\_\_\_ (stay) at home if it \_\_\_\_\_ (rain) tomorrow.
- 4 If I \_\_\_\_\_ (finish) the work early, I \_\_\_\_\_ (play) basketball with you.

## 7 Complete the sentences with your own ideas.

- If I go to London, \_\_\_\_\_.
- If I have a ten-day holiday, \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you don't work hard in school, \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you lend me your football, \_\_\_\_\_.
- If you call me, \_\_\_\_\_.

## Speaking

## 8 Pair Work Ask and answer these questions with your partner.

What can/will you do if ...

- there is a fire?
- there is an earthquake?
- your bike is broken on your way to school?
- you get lost?

## Example

A: Baining, what will you do if there is a fire?

B: I will stay calm and call 119.

## 9 Group Work Talk about the discoveries in Exercise 2. Which do you think is the most important?

## Example

A: I think X-rays are the most important discovery.

B: Why?

A: Because with X-rays, doctors can help fix broken bones more easily.

C: ...

# 23 Discovery of the Year



## Warm-up

1 Match the inventions with the inventors.

- |                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| a the light bulb | Cai Lun             |
| b the telephone  | Thomas Edison       |
| c the plane      | The Wright brothers |
| d the paper      | Alexander Bell      |

2 The following are statements from a speech. What might be the correct order? Guess.

Dr Millar says ...	Order
And above all, they never gave up.	
This discovery wasn't made easily.	
So, in closing, I wish you a wonderful evening as we celebrate these great achievements.	
Just like Charles Kettering, who said, "Believe and act as if it were impossible to fail."	
Welcome to the Roseland Centre.	
It's an honour to be here tonight as we present the award for Discovery of the Year.	



*Dr Harold Millar is giving a speech at a meeting of the Academy of Sciences.*

## Listening

3 Listen to the speech. Check the order of the statements.

4 Listen to what Dr Millar says. What is he trying to do in his speech?

- to introduce Roseland Centre
- to tell the listeners about the hard work of the award winners
- to tell the listeners the difficulties that he has had
- to praise Chairman Wilson's achievements







## Discoveries

5 Listen again. Are these sentences true or false? How do you know?

- 1 The winners of the award have made some discoveries in medicine.
- 2 It was not very difficult to decide who would get the award.
- 3 All of the researchers worked hard.
- 4 Chairman Wilson will present the award.

Function 演讲

6 Read the Key Expressions.

Key Expressions: Making a formal speech

Opening

Chairman Wilson, ladies and gentlemen,  
Welcome to the ...  
It's an honour to be here tonight as we ...

Main body

I want to take this time to share ...  
I have great respect for ...  
And above all, ...  
Just like... who said, ...  
While we honour you this evening,  
we mustn't forget ...

Closing

So, in closing, I wish you a wonderful evening as we ...  
Now, let's give a warm round of applause to ...

Speaking

7 Pair Work Imagine you are the principal of Jolly High School. Choose one of the situations below. Discuss with your partner what you can say in the speech.

You want to give a speech ...

- on the first day of school
- at a parents' meeting
- at a school concert

Example

A: We can begin the speech by saying "Dear parents, teachers and students".

B: Then we can say "Welcome to Jolly High School".

8 Your Turn Write a short speech. Then give your speech to the class.

Example

Dear parents, teachers and students,  
Welcome to Jolly High School,  
and welcome to our school concert. It's an honour to have the famous songwriter Li Mengtao here. ...

# 24 An Experiment Report

## Warm-up

- 1 Have you done any experiments before? What were they? Did you write an experiment report?

## Reading

- 2 Read the Reading Help. Read the experiment report and take notes on page 95.

### Reading Help: Taking notes

- Skim the report quickly to understand the purpose of the experiment.
- Look at the tables and pictures to get key information.
- Write down key words like numbers, dates and actions.
- Use short forms or symbols, e.g.  $>$  = bigger,  $x$  = not,  $\square$  = because.

## An Experiment Report on Growing Potato Plants

### Things prepared:

- a potato that has sprouts
- a flower pot with soil
- a camera to record progress



### Observation:

#### Day One

The colour of the soil looks darker because I have just watered it. In the centre of the pot, I can see a tiny sprout that has grown from the potato under the soil. I'll call it Buddy. Buddy is green and yellow. I wonder how fast it will grow.



#### Day Six

Without much change in the past six days, I finally see some new progress on Buddy as it has grown taller. It's exciting to see new life like this. I hope Buddy can grow faster.



#### Day Eleven

Buddy is getting larger! Three more new sprouts have grown around Buddy! Green leaves have grown on the new sprouts, but they have not fully grown yet. I guess I need to be a bit more patient.





## Discoveries

Day	Progress
1	A tiny _____ called Buddy has grown.
6	Buddy is _____ than before.
11	Buddy _____. _____ have grown around Buddy!
13	Buddy continues _____. More _____ have grown.
15	The leaves on the other sprouts are _____ tall.

## Day Thirteen

Buddy continues to grow taller. The leaves on the new sprouts have grown a bit. I'm also excited to see more new sprouts that have grown from under the soil.



## Day Fifteen

Finally, the leaves on the other sprouts are 3 cm tall. They're so green. I hope they will soon grow into new potatoes.



## What I have learned

It's really interesting to grow potatoes. During these fifteen days, I have learned that growing potato plants needs plenty of water. If the soil is dry, the potato will fail to grow. I have also learned that the temperature needs to be right. If it is too cold, it won't grow.

I feel that growing plants is just like trying to succeed with anything in life – it takes not only time, but also lots of effort and patience.

## 3 Read the text again and answer the questions.

- 1 How does the writer feel when she sees the progress of the plant?
- 2 What do you need to do to grow potato plants successfully?
- 3 How is growing plants similar to trying to succeed in life?

4 **Your Opinion** Do you think this is a good experiment for six-year-old kids? Why or why not?

## Speaking

- 5 **Pair Work** Choose a day from the experiment in the text. Describe it for your partner to guess which day it is. Then change roles.

## Example

- A:** *A tiny sprout has grown from the potato under the soil.*
- B:** *It's Day One.*



# Communication Workshop

## Reading

1 Read Rich's story and fill in the table below.

### Learning from Discoveries

When I was in junior high school, I was not good at sports because I was overweight. I was often laughed at by other students in my PE class. Gradually, I came to believe that I did not have the talent for sports.

One day, I was playing table tennis with a classmate in my PE class. My teacher said I was playing well and asked me to show the



other students how to play. I was very happy because it was the first time I had ever been praised by my PE teacher. From then on, I made up my mind to practise table tennis every day. After a lot of practice, I became the best table tennis player in my class. I started to love sports and joined others in doing all kinds of sports: running, swimming, football, basketball, etc. One year later, I not only did well in my PE class but also lost 10 kg and became the star of my class at the school sports games.

The experience of going from failure to success has taught me that everyone can be successful if they work hard.

Before	Personal experience	After
What was he like?	What happened?	What did he learn?



## Discoveries

2 In pairs, ask and answer questions about Rich's experience.

**Example**

- A:** *What did Rich think about himself when he was in junior high school?*  
**B:** *He thought he could not do sports.*  
**A:** *What happened one day during PE class?*  
**B:** *His teacher...  
He learned...*

**Writing**

3 Think of a personal discovery or experience which has changed your life or from which you have learned something. Then answer the questions below.

Before	Personal discovery/ experience	After
What were you like? _____	What happened? _____	What was the result? _____
How did you behave? _____	When did it happen? _____	Did it change your behaviour or beliefs? _____
What did you believe? _____		What did you learn from it? _____

4 Write about your discovery or experience. Use your answers in Exercise 3 and the example in Exercise 1 to help you.



**My Discovery / Experience**

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

## Check Your Progress

**A** A *discovery* is something that exists already and we learn about. An *invention* is a tool that is created by someone. Put the items in the box below into the correct list.

paper	electricity	light bulb
X-rays	DNA	airplane

Invention	Discovery
1 _____	4 _____
2 _____	5 _____
3 _____	6 _____

Vocabulary \_\_\_ / 6

**B** Use words from the box below to complete the passage.

treated	antibiotics	diseases
DNA	go through	parents

During the last hundred years, many new discoveries have changed our lives. Among them, antibiotics, DNA, and X-rays are three examples. With the discovery of 7 \_\_\_\_\_, a lot of 8 \_\_\_\_\_ can be cured more easily. Similarly, with the discovery of 9 \_\_\_\_\_ the building block of life \_\_\_\_\_ scientists can tell a lot more about what we get from our 10 \_\_\_\_\_ so that many diseases can be explained, 11 \_\_\_\_\_ or even prevented. X-rays are another example. As it can 12 \_\_\_\_\_ things like skin and wood but not things like bones or metal, doctors can use them to treat broken bones far more easily.

**C** Choose the best words to complete the sentences.

- 13 If she \_\_\_\_\_ hard, she \_\_\_\_\_ into college.  
a will work / gets  
b works / will get
- 14 The dog \_\_\_\_\_ inside if it \_\_\_\_\_ trained.  
a will live / be  
b will live / is
- 15 The land \_\_\_\_\_ healthy if we \_\_\_\_\_ the soil.  
a will be / take care of  
b is / will take care of
- 16 Some snakes \_\_\_\_\_ you if you \_\_\_\_\_ bitten by them.  
a will kill / are  
b kill / will be
- 17 If lightning \_\_\_\_\_ a tree, it \_\_\_\_\_.  
a will strike / burns  
b strikes / will burn
- 18 You \_\_\_\_\_ for the weekend if you \_\_\_\_\_.  
a can stay / like  
b stay / like
- 19 If you \_\_\_\_\_ him, \_\_\_\_\_ him this note.  
a see / to give  
b see / give
- 20 If the weather \_\_\_\_\_ fine, we \_\_\_\_\_ go swimming tomorrow.  
a is / will  
b will be / will

Grammar \_\_\_ / 14



# Fun Zone 4

# Show Time!

1 Match the people with the descriptions.



a Thomas Edison



b Leonardo da Vinci



c The Wright Brothers



d Isaac Newton

1 **Artist, scientist and engineer**

His most famous painting is the *Mona Lisa*. He made notes and drawings for a tank, a helicopter and a submarine.

2 **Inventors and pilots**

They began by building and flying "gliders", light planes without engines (发动机). After many tests through the years, finally, on December 17, 1903 they successfully flew the first airplane.

3 **Mathematician and scientist**

He made great progress in advanced mathematics and showed that light is made up of different colours. He also defined laws of gravity and motion (物体的运动), which later became the basis of modern physics.

4 **Inventor and businessman**

Many people think he invented the first light bulb, but he actually created many things that people could use in their homes. He invented the first record player. He also started one of the first electric companies in 1880.

2 Which invention is scientifically impossible? Which ones are real products?

1 **\*Clocky\***



To stop the noise, you've got to find him!

With "Clocky", getting up in the morning is fun! When you press the "off" button, Clocky moves off your bedside table onto the floor and hides somewhere in your bedroom.

2 **Fireplace with Waterfall**

This fantastic new fireplace doesn't only keep you warm. You can look at a beautiful waterfall in your living room and listen to the relaxing sound of water.



3 **Teleport**



Do you hate the journey to school every morning? With "Teleport" you can be there in a few seconds! Maximum range at the moment is 5 km.

4 **Canine Diving Suit**



Dogs love swimming but never get the chance to explore underwater. The next time you go underwater, take your dog with you in this fantastic new diving suit!

### Formal and Informal Language

- When you look up words in good dictionaries, you can see if they are formal or informal.

#### Example

*kid* /kɪd/ n. [C] (informal) a child

- When you write down new words and expressions, note if they are formal or informal.

#### Example

*Hi, Chris. How's it going?* → informal

*Good morning. How are you, Mr Tallen?* → formal



Make a list of informal words and expressions that you know. Then write down their equivalents in formal language.

Informal words and expressions	Their equivalents in formal language

### Unit Diary

How well can you do these?



Language and Skills

- I can understand the text about important discoveries.
- I can write conditional clauses.
- I know how to make a formal speech.
- I know how to take notes while reading.
- I can write about a personal discovery or experience which has changed my life.

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

Study Skills

- I can tell the difference between formal and informal words or expressions with the help of a dictionary.

<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
--------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------



- ▶ Talk about recycling and saving energy.
- ▶ Read about tree planting in China.
- ▶ Listen to a dialogue about river pollution.
- ▶ Write about helping save the planet.
- ▶ Learn how to interview someone.



## Getting Ready

1 Look at the Key Words. What do you know about pollution?



### Key Words: Pollution

air, energy, factory, nature, plant trees, pollute, recycle, reuse, rubbish, soil, take action, water

### Example

*The air, water and land are polluted. We must take action to protect the planet.*

2 Look at the photos and answer these questions.

- 1 What can you see in Photos A and B? What problems do these things cause?
- 2 What are the men doing in Photo C?
- 3 What is happening in Photo D?



# 25 Going Green

## Warm-up

- 1 Look at the photos. Do you think the boy lives in a town or in the country? Why?

## Example

*I think the boy lives in the country, because he is standing in a field and holding two hens.*

*We hear a lot about how we should change our lives to help save our planet. Jim Barnes, 15, from Oxford, talks about what his family does every day to save the planet.*

A common UK family produces more than one ton of rubbish a year. Some of this waste takes hundreds of years to decay. It also costs lots of money to keep buying new things to replace the things we throw away.

So to help save the planet and save money, our family has decided to recycle everything. We collect used things, such as paper and bottles, and put them into different bins. After they are treated in the recycling place they can be used again. This will help reduce a lot of waste. We're also going to grow our own vegetables and we already keep hens. Soon, we can eat our own eggs for breakfast.

In a year, a family like ours uses about 4,800 kWh for watching television, taking showers, using the dishwasher and the washing machine, and more. This is a lot. To produce this much energy, a lot of pollution is created. This pollution can cause health problems and global warming.

Because of all this, we decided to do something to save electricity. We watch less TV and use low energy light bulbs now. We stopped using the dishwasher. Mum also tries to save energy while cooking.

What's more, we try to use our car less to cut down on air pollution. My dad organises a car pool with our neighbours and they take turns driving to work. And I ride my bicycle to school. How cool is that?!



## Reading

- 2 Look at the photos and skim the text. Who wrote this article? What is it about?





## Save the Planet



- 3 Read the Reading Help. Then read the text and find the problems and solutions Jim mentioned.

**Reading Help: Problems and solutions**

- Skim through the text and identify the key problems. Problems often appear before solutions.
- For some problems, there may be more than one solution.

Problems	Solutions
Produce too much _____ ;	_____ everything:
Spend too much _____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• _____ used things</li> <li>• _____ our own vegetables and _____ hens</li> </ul>
Use too much _____	_____ electricity:
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• _____ less TV</li> <li>• use _____</li> <li>• _____ the dishwasher</li> <li>• save electricity while _____</li> </ul>
Cut down on _____	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• _____ car pools to work</li> <li>• _____ to school</li> </ul>

- 4 Talk about the solutions that Jim's family found to save energy.
- 5 **Your Opinion** Which of Jim's actions do you think can help protect the environment most? What other actions do you want to suggest?

**Vocabulary**

- 6 Match the verbs with the words to make as many verb phrases as possible.

save	air pollution
recycle	used things
cut down on	waste
cause	energy
collect	electricity
reduce	

- 7 **Your Turn** Work in pairs and share what you have learned from Jim's family.

**Example**

*I learned that we could try to use less electricity by watching less TV.*

**Speaking**

- 8 **Pair Work** Work in pairs and do an interview: What are the main environmental problems we have? What can we do to protect our environment?



# 26 Our River

## Warm-up

1 What kinds of pollution are there in your neighbourhood? What or who is causing the pollution?

- air pollution
- water pollution
- land pollution
- noise pollution

## Example

*There is land pollution in my community. Some people don't put their rubbish in the dust bins.*

## Listening

2 Listen to the interview between Ellie and Jeremy. Finish Ellie's notes.



## Interview Notes

By Ellie

**Topic:** incident at a polluted local \_\_\_\_\_

**Name:** Jeremy

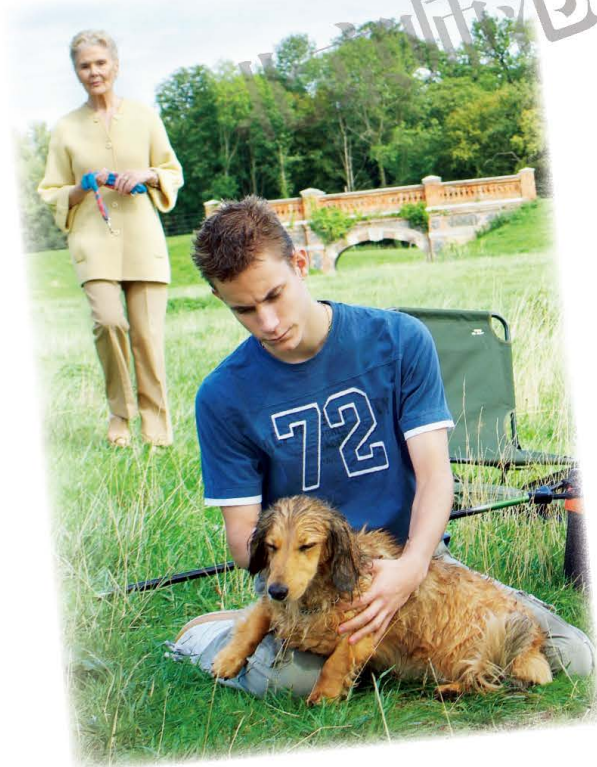
**When:** yesterday at \_\_\_\_\_

**What happened:**

- Jeremy was \_\_\_\_\_ with his friends.
- They didn't \_\_\_\_\_ anything as usual.
- There have been a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ fish.
- A dog \_\_\_\_\_ into the water and couldn't \_\_\_\_\_.
- Jeremy got hold of him and \_\_\_\_\_.

**Result:**

- The dog wasn't well because the water was \_\_\_\_\_.





## Save the Planet

### 3 Listen again and answer the questions.

- Jeremy says "As usual!" What does he mean?
  - He usually goes fishing at around 3 pm.
  - Usually they can't catch any fish.
  - He usually goes fishing with his friends.
- Why didn't the dog feel well?
  - Because he ate the wrong medicine.
  - Because Jeremy hurt him.
  - Because he was in dirty water.
- Why do you think Jeremy has got red spots on his arms?
- How did the vet try to help the dog?

### Function 采访

#### 4 Read the Key Expressions.

#### Key Expressions: Interview

Can I ask you some questions about what happened?

To start with, can you tell us when you were at the river?

You were fishing, weren't you?

What do you mean?

So, what happened yesterday?

So what did you do?

Then how do you feel?

#### 5 Circle the best words. Then answer the questions.

- How / When / What** were you doing at seven o'clock last night?
- Why / Who / What** do people like watching TV?
- What / When / How** did you have dinner last night?
- Where / What / Why** did you go last weekend?

### Speaking

#### 6 Role-play Choose a situation below. Role-play an interview with your partner.

- There was a car accident when you were going home after school.
- A man stole an old lady's handbag when you were shopping.

#### Example

**A:** *Hi, Fred. Can I ask you some questions about the car accident?*

**B:** *Sure.*

**A:** *To start with, can you tell me what you were doing when the car accident happened?*

**B:** *I was going home with my friend Lily after school. We were chatting happily. Suddenly we heard a loud noise. ...*

#### 7 Your Turn What can you do to "go green"?

#### Example

**A:** *I think we should put our rubbish in the right place.*

**B:** *I agree. We should also learn to recycle and reuse things.*





# 27 Tree Heroes

## Warm-up

1 What are trees used for? Why is it important to protect trees?

## Reading

2 Read the first sentence of each paragraph. What is the main idea of the text?

a Problems caused by cutting trees

b Need to plant trees in China

c Work of tree heroes in China

d Tree planting around the world

In many parts of the world, land that was once forest has changed greatly. Some of the land has become part of cities or towns. Some forest areas have become farmland while some other places no longer have any trees because they've been cut down for other reasons. This causes problems. It affects the climate, causes animals to move or die, and can cause deserts to expand.

China needs to plant trees because so many of its forests have been cut down in the last 50 years. Although there are still problems to solve, China's tree-planting programmes are huge. China plants more trees than the rest of the world. Who are some of the people behind these huge numbers? Let's find out.

In Jiangxi Province, 83-year-old Zou Lianying has been planting trees on her land for almost 20 years. She knows that planting trees is good for the environment, so at the age of 64, she sold her cows and pigs and borrowed money to open a forest farm. Her family's forest farm has trees covering about 4 km<sup>2</sup> with more than 8 million trees. Her trees are worth around 12 million RMB but she won't cut down even one tree and still lives very simply. She believes the forest she is planting will be a gift to future generations.

Near Beijing, Wei Guiying and a team of helpers have planted millions of trees. They have also been working at this for more than 20 years. Now, 20 km<sup>2</sup> of hills have turned green. It hasn't been easy for her. She has borrowed money to pay for seedlings and still owes a lot of money. This doesn't seem to matter to her, though, as she says proudly that she's not a millionaire but she has millions of trees.

A lot of work is still needed to prevent deserts from getting larger and to stop the climate from getting warmer, but if more of us can be like these tree heroes, it will certainly make life better for everyone.



## Save the Planet



- 3** Read the Reading Help. Are the following sentences from the text facts or opinions?

**Reading Help: Facts and opinions**

- Facts are true information. They often have figures, dates or places.
- Opinions are what the writer thinks. They often have opinion adjectives (e.g. *boring*), opinion verbs (e.g. *think*, *believe*), or modals (e.g. *might*, *may*).

- 1 China plants more trees than the rest of the world.
  - 2 In Jiangxi Province, 83-year-old Zou Lianying has been planting trees on her land for almost 20 years.
  - 3 They have also been working at this for more than 20 years.
  - 4 It hasn't been easy for her.
  - 5 If more of us can be like these tree heroes, it will certainly make life better for everyone.
- 4** What do the following numbers in the text refer to? Tell your partner about the facts related to these numbers.

50	83	8,000,000
12,000,000	64	20
		4

**Example**

*Zou Lianying opened a forest farm at the age of 64.*

- 5 Your Opinion** Do you agree that Zou Lianying and Wei Guiying are heroes? Why?

**Vocabulary**

- 6** Match two parts of the expressions.

cut down	from getting warmer
solve	from getting bigger
borrow money	trees
prevent the desert	problems
stop the climate	to pay for seedlings

**Speaking**

- 7 Group Work** Work in groups. Make a presentation about tree planting in China. Imagine that you will present it at an international meeting.

- achievements
- good examples
- difficulties
- our beliefs

**Example**

*Ladies and gentlemen,  
I'm here to tell you about tree  
planting in China. ...*



# Communication Workshop

## Reading

1 Read Matthew's article and answer the questions below.

### Save the Planet

Over the last few years, my family and I have started working towards a greener life. My mum and dad drive less and often take a bus to work. They are careful to save gas when they cook. We recycle things like paper, cans and bottles, and we give old clothes and furniture to charities. In order to save energy, we turn off the lights during the day or when they are not being used.

Is all that enough? I believe there is a lot more we can do. For example, we will try to use less water by turning off the tap while we brush our teeth, and reusing the washing machine water to flush the toilet. Taking shorter showers will help too, as it will save water. Every member of our family will take part.

Saving the planet needs everyone's effort. Although each one of us may only do a little, together we can make a big difference. Let's work together to make our planet a better place to live.

- 1 What do Matthew's parents do to help reduce pollution?
- 2 What do Matthew's parents do to save gas?
- 3 What do Matthew and his family usually recycle?
- 4 What will Matthew and his family do to save water?

## Text Builder

2 Can you classify what Matthew and his family do and will do into the following groups?

Protecting the environment		
Recycling	Reducing electricity and fuel use	Saving water
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____



## Save the Planet

### Writing

- 3 Think about what you have done or what you will do to reduce pollution and save energy. Write them down and try to classify them into the different ways of protecting the environment.

Protecting the environment

Recycling	Reducing electricity and fuel use	Saving water and energy
<i>What I have done:</i>	<i>What I have done:</i>	<i>What I have done:</i>
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
<i>What I will do:</i>	<i>What I will do:</i>	<i>What I will do:</i>
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

- 4 Write about what you have done or will do to help save the planet. Use your notes from Exercise 3 and the example in Exercise 1 to help you.



### Save the Planet

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_



## Check Your Progress

**A** Draw lines to match the words with their appropriate meaning.

- |             |   |
|-------------|---|
| 1 prevent   | power that provides electricity for a machine |
| 2 recycle   | to use again                                  |
| 3 energy    | young trees                                   |
| 4 reuse     | harmful things in the environment             |
| 5 reduce    | to stop something from happening              |
| 6 pollution | to use less                                   |
| 7 seedlings | to make something new out of old materials    |

Vocabulary \_\_\_ / 7

**B** Put the sentences in order to make a conversation.

- a Nice to see you too, Susan! School finished?
- b I will be planting trees on a tree farm.
- c What will you do on your holidays?
- d Hi John – nice to see you!
- e Yeah, just about – this is my last week.
- f That's great! It's good to do something to improve the environment.

8 \_\_\_ 9 \_\_\_ 10 \_\_\_ 11 \_\_\_ 12 \_\_\_ 13 \_\_\_

14 How is John helping the environment?  
\_\_\_\_\_

15 What will you do to improve the environment?  
\_\_\_\_\_

**C** Write the correct kind of pollution behind each sentence.

air pollution	water pollution
land pollution	noise pollution

16 There is a river near my home. It is no longer clean and clear. It is dirty and smells bad. \_\_\_\_\_

17 I live near a big factory. It runs day and night, so I can't sleep well.  
\_\_\_\_\_

18 The sky is not clear, and there is lots of smog. I have to wear a mask when I go out. \_\_\_\_\_

19 Batteries pollute the soil. Some land can't even grow crops. \_\_\_\_\_

**D** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words.

prevent	collect
cause	save

20 Turn off the lights. Let's try to \_\_\_\_\_ electricity.

21 They have planted a lot of trees to \_\_\_\_\_ the desert from getting bigger.

22 He is \_\_\_\_\_ used things so they can be recycled.

23 The bad weather \_\_\_\_\_ troubles for the fishermen.

Grammar \_\_\_ / 16





## Disappearing Nature

- 1 Are there any environmental problems in your neighbourhood? What are they?
- 2 Read the text and answer the questions.
  - 1 Why must we save the Amazon?
  - 2 When did the Aral Sea start getting smaller?
  - 3 What is happening to the grassland near the Gobi Desert?
  - 4 How can the Green Wall Project help to save the grassland?
- 3 Read the text again. What can you do to help protect the environment?



The Amazon (亚马逊) rainforest in South America, at seven million km<sup>2</sup>, is the largest rainforest in the world. The forest is important for people all over the world, because it produces a lot of oxygen (氧气), and also helps to cool the weather. But large areas of the rainforest are being cut down for wood — 55% of the forest could be gone by 2030! The World Wildlife Federation (WWF) is helping to stop some areas of the rainforest from being cut down.

At 68,000 km<sup>2</sup>, the Aral Sea (咸海) was one of the largest lakes in the world before the 1960s. Then rivers were diverted (修改河道) and it has been getting smaller ever since. By 2007, it was only 10% of its original size and had split into three separate lakes. There are constant dust storms and the villages sit on the edge of a vast desert with large ships stranded in its sand. A dam (水坝) has been built to try to restore higher water levels in the North with some success.



In China, about 3,600 km<sup>2</sup> of grassland near the Gobi turns into desert every year. There are often storms that blow dust all the way to Beijing. The storms are getting worse each year and have a deep impact on farmers.

The goal of the Green Wall Project, started in 1978, is to increase forests in northern China from 5% to 15% in order to stop the desert from growing. The project faces many challenges. However, people must never give up on it.




### English outside School

Learning English is not just confined to the classroom. You can also learn English outside school. Here are some suggestions for you:

- Watch an English DVD with the subtitles in English.
- Read a reader for your level.
- Read newspapers and magazines in English.
- Go to the BBC's website ([www.bbc.co.uk](http://www.bbc.co.uk)). It is a good place to practise your reading. You can also listen to BBC radio programmes online.
- Talk to foreigners in English in your town or when you are on holiday.
- Listen to songs in English and get the words of songs from the Internet.



 Which of the things above have you tried? Put a ✓ next to each. Try other new ways of learning English and have fun!

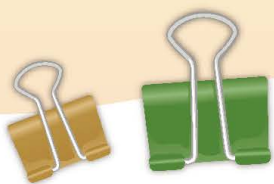
### Unit Diary

How well can you do these?



Language and Skills	• I can understand the texts about a green family and some tree heroes.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can identify problems and solutions.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I know how to interview someone.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can tell the difference between facts and opinions.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
	• I can write an article about how I help to save the planet.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Culture	• I can understand the environmental problems the Earth is facing.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
Study Skills	• I know more ways of learning English outside school.	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>





## Appendices

<b>Literature Spot: Lord of the Flies</b>	114~115
<b>Project 1: An Introduction to a Foreign Language</b>	116
<b>Project 2: A Biography of a Role Model</b>	117
<b>Workbook</b>	118~171
<b>Grammar Summary</b>	172~175
<b>Notes to the Texts</b>	176~183
<b>Tapescripts</b>	184~189
<b>Vocabulary in Each Unit</b>	190~198
<b>Word List</b>	199~207
<b>Irregular Verbs</b>	208~209
后 记	210

# Literature Spot

## Lord of the Flies

### 1 The Island

Read the first part of a summary of the *Lord of the Flies* by William Golding, the Nobel Prize winner. Match the names of the boys (1–4) with the descriptions (a–d).

- 1 Piggy a) the leader of the group
- 2 Ralph b) a boy from Jack's group who helps Ralph
- 3 Jack c) a boy with glasses
- 4 Simon d) in charge of the hunters

In the middle of a terrible war, a plane carrying a group of English schoolboys crashed in the jungle. Two of the boys, Ralph and Piggy, saw each other on the beach. They found a shell and used it to call the other boys. The last group of boys to come to the beach was led by an older boy, Jack. Jack said that he would be in charge of the hunters, and they would look for food.

### 2 The Beast

Read the second part of the summary. List the three most negative things that happened.

Ralph gave the boys jobs: building places to live, collecting water, and keeping the fire going. However, Simon and Ralph ended up doing most of the work while the other boys played. The hunters tried but were unable to catch a wild pig, which angered Jack.

That night, a plane was shot down. The pilot jumped from the plane, landed in a tree and died. The two little boys who were keeping the fire going saw him and thought he was a monster, a terrible beast. They told the other boys about it and all the boys were afraid. Then Ralph, Jack and some others went into the jungle to find it out. Seeing the man in the tree, they thought that was indeed a monster. They ran back and told the other boys that they saw the "beast". Seeing that Ralph was afraid, Jack told the boys that Ralph shouldn't be their leader, but the boys didn't agree. So Jack said he was the new leader of the hunters, and they went off on their own. Jack and the hunters ran wild in the jungle, and when they caught a pig, they put its head on a stick in the ground as an offering to the beast.

Some time later, some smaller boys were playing when one of the hunters came along. He was very mean to them, and he destroyed their sand castles and threw stones at them. Then all of the hunters painted their faces and went off looking for another pig. Later, Ralph and Piggy saw a ship going by, but the hunters had let the fire go out. When the hunters came back with a pig, Ralph yelled at them about the fire, but they ignored him. The hunters relit the fire, roasted the pig and danced wildly round the fire. Meanwhile, Simon went walking in the jungle and saw the pig's head covered in flies. It seemed to come to life and talk to him. Simon fainted.





The boys decided to choose a leader. The boys in Jack's group voted for him, but the rest chose Ralph. Jack was not pleased. Ralph, Jack and another boy from Jack's group, Simon, explored the island, only to discover there were no other people there. They were all alone. Using Piggy's glasses, they lit a signal fire so ships passing by would see them.



### 3 Chaos

**Read the last part of the summary. Why did the boys get out of control? What do you think would happen if you and your classmates were in the same situation as the boys?**

When Simon woke up, he walked down the beach and saw the dead pilot in the tree. He then understood that there was no monster, except the "monster" that lived inside the boys. He went back to the group to tell them what he had seen.

Ralph and Piggy joined in the boys' wild behavior at Jack's feast. After the feast, Jack asked all the boys to join his group, and most of them did. They were dancing and chanting when they saw something coming towards them. They thought it was the beast, so they attacked and killed it. Then they discovered it was only Simon.

Sad and upset, Ralph, Piggy and some others returned to their old camp. Back at Jack's camp, he told the others that Ralph and Piggy were a problem and were dangerous to their group. That night, Jack and his group attacked Ralph's camp and stole Piggy's glasses.

The following morning, Ralph, Piggy and the other boys decided to try to get Piggy's glasses back. However, a fight between Jack and Ralph started. Piggy tried to stop it. He said that it was better to have rules and to agree, than it was to fight and kill. Suddenly, one of the hunters pushed a big rock down the hill and killed Piggy. Afraid, Ralph ran off into the jungle.

In the morning, the hunters came after Ralph, and they set fire to the jungle. Ralph ran out of the jungle and towards the beach. He was running so fast that he almost ran into a British sailor. The sailor's ship had gone by. He had seen their fire, so he came to shore to find out who was there. When he saw the boys with their faces painted and carrying big, sharp sticks, he asked Ralph to explain. Ralph tried to tell him everything that had happened, but he began to cry, and so did the other boys. In the end, the boys were taken to the ship to go home.









# A Biography of a Role Model Project 2

You will write a biography about a good role model.

**Step 1** Work in groups. Choose a role model you want to write about.

## Example

**A:** I think Yang Liwei is a good role model. He worked very hard to become the first astronaut in China.

**B:** I agree. I also think Liu Xiang is a good role model. He didn't give up when he had difficulties.



**Step 2** Collect information about the person that your group chooses. You can go to the library or use the Internet to search for information.

## Example

### Liu Xiang

- a successful athlete
- born in 1983 in Shanghai
- won an Olympic gold medal in 2004
- practised hard after he recovered
- kind person — donated a large sum of money to the victims of 2008 Sichuan earthquake

### You can find out:

- What is his / her job?
- Why is he / she famous?
- What has he / she achieved?
- Has he / she had any difficulties? How did he / she overcome them?
- Apart from his / her career, what has he / she done for the society?

**Step 3** Work with your group. Write a biography about the person. Collect photos or draw pictures for your writing.

## Example



### Liu Xiang

Liu Xiang is a successful athlete. He won an Olympic gold medal in 2004. He ...

## Self-assessment

- 1 Did all your group members like the role model you choose?  
 Yes  No Why? \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 How did you come to an agreement?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 What did you learn from doing the biography?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Are you satisfied with your writing and presentation?  
 Yes  No Why? \_\_\_\_\_

**Step 4** Put your writings together. Present your writing to the class. You can also use PPT to present your writing.

## Unit 1 Language

## Lesson 1

### Vocabulary & Language Focus

**A** Look at the pictures and write the correct nationalities.



1 C \_\_\_\_\_



2 I \_\_\_\_\_



3 R \_\_\_\_\_



4 C \_\_\_\_\_



5 A \_\_\_\_\_



6 F \_\_\_\_\_

**C** Translate the sentences into English.

- 1 尊重不同文化是很重要的。
- 2 当你旅行时，学习当地的某些体态语是有用的。
- 3 在有些地区，露出你的鞋底是不礼貌的。
- 4 在亚洲国家，人们见面时一般不相互亲吻。
- 5 在西方文化中，人们说再见时不鞠躬。
- 6 体态语是一种重要的交流方式。
- 7 她点了点头表示同意。
- 8 他举起手示意要发言。

**B** Rewrite the following sentences. Use the passive voice.

1 People of different cultures use different types of body language.

Different types of body language are used by people of different cultures.

2 Tourists spend a lot of money.

\_\_\_\_\_

3 Hotels raise prices during the summer.

\_\_\_\_\_

4 Many travellers understand the importance of body language.

\_\_\_\_\_

5 Many people make mistakes when they travel abroad.

\_\_\_\_\_

6 In some countries, local people show respect with a bow.

\_\_\_\_\_





7 People communicate messages through words and body language.

\_\_\_\_\_



**D Complete the blog. Use these words:**

Asia bow culture East especially  
Europeans Japan Japanese silly

Chris Lee's BLOG    

I've just got back from 1 \_\_\_\_\_ – the most interesting country in the Far 2 \_\_\_\_\_! One of the most interesting things about 3 \_\_\_\_\_ people is their body language. I've never seen anyone 4 \_\_\_\_\_ as much as they do! Although I'm also from 5 \_\_\_\_\_, bowing isn't very common in my 6 \_\_\_\_\_. So, at first, I felt a bit 7 \_\_\_\_\_ in Japan, 8 \_\_\_\_\_ when I was saying goodbye to people. Then I saw that even 9 \_\_\_\_\_ and Americans were bowing. So, after that, I started bowing too. And now, I can't stop!

## ▶ Reading

**Put the sentences into the correct place in the article. Write A-E.**

- A Applicants (申请人) should shake the interviewer's hand at the beginning and end of the interview.
- B "If applicants are trained in good body language," he says, "they'll shine at interviews."
- C But how many applicants ever think of practising their body language?
- D They may also practise answering questions that are often asked in interviews.
- E And yet, good body language can be the difference between getting the job and not getting it.

## Watch your body if you want the job!

When job applicants are getting ready for an interview, they try very hard to make sure they are well prepared. In addition to researching the company and preparing a list of questions for their interviewer, applicants may get a haircut or buy a new suit. 1 \_\_\_\_

2 \_\_\_\_ Not many, according to Chris Hunt, a careers adviser in Shanghai. 3 \_\_\_\_

"Good body language makes a job applicant look well prepared," Hunt explains. "4 \_\_\_\_ They should also sit up straight and look at the interviewer during the interview."

Hunt advises all job applicants in China to take a course in body language, especially if they are looking for a job in a western company. 5 \_\_\_\_

## ▶ Listening

**What types of body language are the children describing? Listen and label the pictures with A–D. Then write what each one means.**



\_\_\_\_\_ done



confident of \_\_\_\_\_



saying \_\_\_\_\_



you don't \_\_\_\_\_

## Vocabulary & Language Focus

**A** Complete the sentences. Use these words:

got used to grey native speakers  
wonder standard flat

- 1 On rainy days, the sky is \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 There is no such thing as \_\_\_\_\_ English.
- 3 I \_\_\_\_\_ what the weather will be like tomorrow.
- 4 I found the food tasted strange at first, but soon I \_\_\_\_\_ it.
- 5 In British English, an apartment is called a \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Our goal is to speak English like \_\_\_\_\_.

**C** Translate the sentences into English.

- 1 你知道美式英语和英式英语的区别吗?
- 2 英语没有标准的拼写方式。
- 3 你爷爷不会说英语, 是吗?
- 4 他们赢了比赛, 不是吗?
- 5 我没注意到这两本书有什么不同。
- 6 以前我从未想过这些问题。
- 7 你听得越多, 就会越适应。
- 8 我没意识到时间过得这么快。

**B** Complete the sentences with the correct question tags.

- 1 Kenny comes from America, \_\_\_\_\_?
- 2 In America, the ground floor is called the first floor, \_\_\_\_\_?
- 3 Sally hasn't come back yet, \_\_\_\_\_?
- 4 The food in England isn't very good, \_\_\_\_\_?
- 5 Jacky can run really fast, \_\_\_\_\_?
- 6 The students aren't very hard-working, \_\_\_\_\_?
- 7 You will be on time, \_\_\_\_\_?
- 8 I wasn't very polite, \_\_\_\_\_?
- 9 You didn't understand the question, \_\_\_\_\_?
- 10 We should try harder, \_\_\_\_\_?



**Reading**

Read the article. Then answer the questions below.

**CRS: the Slang (俚语) from the East End**

If you thought learning English was hard, try talking to a cockney — someone who comes from the East End of London. If you go to East London now, you'll see the modern buildings at Canary Wharf. But right up until 1980, the area was home to London's docks, where ships from all over the world came to England to trade their goods. And it was there that, over the years, the workers developed their own slang: cockney rhyming slang (CRS, 伦敦东区押韵俚语).

CRS is a type of slang where a word is replaced by a phrase that rhymes with it. So, for example, "eyes" becomes "mince pies" (sweet pies that are popular at Christmas), and "telephone" becomes "dog and bone". To make matters worse for non-cockneys, the rhyming phrases are usually made shorter, so that "mince pies" becomes "minces" and "dog and bone" becomes "dog". As a result, it can be very difficult for even native speakers to understand a conversation between two cockneys.

However, some CRS terms have made their way into standard English slang. For example, many English people will say "I'm on my tod" when they're on their own, not knowing that "on one's tod" is actually rhyming slang (Tod Sloan was a famous horse rider). Similarly, some people say "barnet" when they're talking about their hair, not realising that "barnet" is also rhyming slang (Barnet Fair is a horse show held every year in North London).

So if you ever visit the East End of London, see if you can practise some CRS with the locals. They won't believe their minces!

- 1 What is a cockney?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 What does CRS stand for?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 What are "mince pies" in CRS?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 What is Barnet Fair?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 At the end of the article, why does the writer say "They won't believe their minces!"?  
\_\_\_\_\_

## Vocabulary & Language Focus

**A** Complete the sentences. Use these words:

method passage progress  
useful work out review

- The only way to learn new words is to \_\_\_\_\_ them regularly.
- When you read a \_\_\_\_\_ in English, you don't have to understand every word.
- You can often \_\_\_\_\_ the meaning of a word from the context.
- When you learn a new word, it's \_\_\_\_\_ to write it down in a vocabulary book.
- Everyone has their own \_\_\_\_\_ of learning a language.
- If you have a clear learning plan, it's easier to measure your \_\_\_\_\_.

**C** Translate the sentences into English.

- 在我看来，英语不是一门难学的语言。
- 快速阅读文章，理解大意。
- 我爸爸每周都会检查我的英语学习情况。
- 我每天晚上睡觉之前复习新单词。
- 顺便问一句，你做完功课没有？
- 你越多用它，就觉得越容易。
- 我将确定我的目标，并制订一个学习计划去完成这些目标。

**B** Look at the underlined words in the sentences. Then complete the table. Write *a-d* and tick the correct boxes.

- a without delay  
b unhappy about a situation that you cannot control  
c things that you hope to get or reach in the future  
d gave in return for something good





- Ellen was frustrated when she got her test results.
- Alison did her homework immediately.
- Philip rewarded himself with a bowl of noodles.
- It's important to set yourself clear goals.

Meaning (a, b, c or d)	Noun	Adjective	Verb	Adverb



**D** Complete the blog. Use these words:

online improve passages  
structures tips try

Irene Chan's BLOG    

I find learning English very difficult mainly because the grammar is so complex. Some of the language **1** \_\_\_\_\_ are very different from the ones we have in Chinese!





Nevertheless, I'm trying very hard to **2** \_\_\_\_\_ my English. Every day I go **3** \_\_\_\_\_ to chat with native speakers and ask them for language learning **4** \_\_\_\_\_. I also read a lot of different **5** \_\_\_\_\_ in English and look up any words I don't know afterwards.


Do you have any suggestions for me? Let me know and I'll give them a **6** \_\_\_\_\_!

## ▶ Reading

Read the texts and answer the questions.

1

Irene Chan's BLOG    

 Bobby	Irene, I have a suggestion for you: improve your English by singing karaoke! It might sound strange, but it does work.
--	--

How did Bobby respond to Irene's blog?

\_\_\_\_\_

2

**To:** Class 3C  
**From:** Mr Wright










Since I'll be away next weekend, the 4:30 oral English lesson will be on Thursday, not Friday, afternoon this week. It will also start half an hour later than usual.

See you all there!

When is the oral English lesson this week?

\_\_\_\_\_

3

<b>To:</b>	ray@biaozhun.com
<b>From:</b>	joanna@biaozhun.com

Hi Ray,  
Do you still have my English dictionary? I need it to work on my project tomorrow.

Thanks,  
Joanna

What does Joanna want Ray to do?

\_\_\_\_\_

## ▶ Listening

Listen to the interview with a foreign teacher. Write the correct answer *a*, *b* or *c*.

- 1 Miss Green thinks students should \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a share language learning tips
  - b study once a week
  - c have clear goals
- 2 Miss Green suggests that students \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a have fun when they're learning
  - b help each other with their English
  - c have more hobbies
- 3 Miss Green tells students to avoid \_\_\_\_\_.
  - a getting frustrated
  - b revising their learning plans
  - c changing their learning methods

## Vocabulary & Language Focus

**A** Complete the sentences. Use these words:

ancient are used to cartoons  
public science fiction society

- 1 Many successful films have been made from \_\_\_\_\_ books.
- 2 There are a lot of English books at the \_\_\_\_\_ library.
- 3 Ricky loves reading the \_\_\_\_\_ in the newspaper.
- 4 Many people \_\_\_\_\_ reading e-books now.
- 5 In \_\_\_\_\_ times, there were no printed books.
- 6 In modern \_\_\_\_\_, people don't have much time to read.

**C** Translate the sentences into English.

- 1 门口来了一个男孩。
- 2 汽车抛锚了。我们只好步行到达公园。
- 3 在故事里，女孩走入了一片奇怪的森林。
- 4 战后这两名军官依然保持着密切的联系。
- 5 她和一个名叫爱丽丝的女孩相处得很好。
- 6 他的好奇心常常让他陷入麻烦。

**B** Rewrite the following sentences. Use the passive voice.

- 1 Cindy read out the poem.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Jason wrote the short story.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Everyone in the class has seen the play.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Carmen has borrowed the history book.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Mrs Chen has changed the students' reading habits.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 Mr Li gave me some suggestions.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 Someone stole the English dictionary in the library yesterday.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 8 In some ways, watching television has replaced reading books.  
\_\_\_\_\_



**D Complete the blog. Circle the correct words.**

Mandy's BLOG

I've just read a great book – *Catcher in the Rye*. It **1 was / were** written by J.D. Salinger, an American writer, and it was **2 publish / published** in 1951.

*Catcher in the Rye* is about a 16-year-old boy called Holden Caulfield who has been **3 forced / created** to leave his school. Holden doesn't want his parents to find out what **4 have been happened / has happened**, so for three days he stays in New York City, where he has many adventures.

*Catcher in the Rye* **5 are named / was named** by Modern Library as one of the 100 best English-language novels of the 20th century. What's more, it **6 has been compared / compared** by many people to Mark Twain's classic *The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn* – which, by the way, is next on my reading list!

## Listening

**Listen to the dialogues and read the statements. Write T (True) or F (False).**

- 1 Friendship is one of the main ideas of *The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn*. \_\_\_\_\_
- 2 *The Lord of the Rings* is set in a land called Middle-earth. \_\_\_\_\_
- 3 One of the main characters in the *Harry Potter* books is a lord. \_\_\_\_\_
- 4 *Brave New World* is set in London in 1931. \_\_\_\_\_

## Reading

**Match the books with the readers. Write A-E.**

**A** *Futurama* is an everyday story of a family living in a big city. But the family is made up of four strange creatures, and the city is CT33 on Planet Zog!

**B** Learn about China's recent past in this all-new study by Ann Whitehouse, who lives in Hong Kong. Enjoyable for serious students and everyday readers, *Modern China* makes the perfect present!

**C** Improve your language learning with *Power Learning*, the latest book from world-famous self-help author Ron Power. Whatever the language, this book will make the difference!

**D** *In the Cool Light of Day* is a book for everyone in love with this crazy, modern world of ours. A collection of poems that will leave you surprised, excited, and much, much more ...

**E** First performed in 1949, and as important today as it ever was, Arthur Miller's award-winning play is presented here with an introduction by Broadway director Bruce Hays.

- 1 \_\_\_\_\_ Amy likes reading history books.
- 2 \_\_\_\_\_ Donald likes science fiction books.
- 3 \_\_\_\_\_ Lisa likes reading poems.
- 4 \_\_\_\_\_ Colin likes reading plays.
- 5 \_\_\_\_\_ Susan wants to get better at learning English.

## Vocabulary & Language Focus

### A Complete the sentences. Use these words:

advantage depends wise  
period clear through

- 1 Mark Twain was a very \_\_\_\_\_ man.
- 2 What kind of books you like \_\_\_\_\_ on your character.
- 3 It was quite \_\_\_\_\_ that she was lying.
- 4 The early years are an important \_\_\_\_\_ in a person's life.
- 5 A bird flew in \_\_\_\_\_ the window.
- 6 Children who read regularly have an \_\_\_\_\_ over those who don't.

### B Match the quotations with the meanings.

- 1 A book is never a classic: it becomes it. (E & J de Goncourt)
- 2 A novel is a mirror walking on a highway (公路). (Stendhal)
- 3 One who believes all of a book would be better off without books. (Mencius)
- 4 In reality, every reader is, when he reads, the reader of himself. (Marcel Proust)
- 5 Reading is creation directed. (Jean-Paul Sartre)
- 6 A quotation at the right moment is like bread to the hungry. (The Talmud)

### C Translate the sentences into English.

- 1 今天我们将讨论教育的重要性。
- 2 他到处找他的钥匙。
- 3 他在英语测验前很紧张。
- 4 好书让我们增长知识。
- 5 她有一本著名的小说。
- 6 阅读是个好习惯，因为它有助于发展想象力。
- 7 环境优美是这个城市的一个优势。

- a Reading, like writing, is a creative act.
- b When we read, we are guided by and learn about our own character.
- c A book is only a classic if it has been important for a long time.
- d At the right time, quotations can be very welcome.
- e Novels show what the real world is like.
- f We shouldn't believe everything we read in a book.



**D** Complete the webpage. Write *a-i*.

a achieving    b classics    c develop  
d e-books    e habit    f inspired  
g leader    h storybooks    i succeed

Home
New
Services
Contacts

## Read to succeed!

As the American writer Margaret Fuller famously said, "Today a reader, tomorrow a 1 \_\_\_\_." Or, in other words, people who read a lot today will 2 \_\_\_\_ in the future. Whether you read non-fiction books or 3 \_\_\_\_, modern books or 4 \_\_\_\_, printed books or 5 \_\_\_\_, it doesn't matter; if you form a 6 \_\_\_\_ of reading regularly, you'll greatly improve your chances of 7 \_\_\_\_ your goals in life.

Why? Because you'll learn about new things; you'll 8 \_\_\_\_ your imagination; and you'll feel 9 \_\_\_\_ too!

Click here to see our list of amazing books!

### ▶ Reading

Read the reading journal. Match the paragraphs with the paragraph headings. Write *a-e*.

a Background    b Opinion  
c Quotations    d Summary  
e Themes

#### The Little Prince

1 \_\_\_\_

*The Little Prince* is a storybook by Antoine de Saint-Exupéry. It was first published in 1943 and is now one of the best-selling books ever.

2 \_\_\_\_

The narrator, a pilot whose plane has crashed (坠毁) in the desert, meets the little prince, who is visiting the Earth from the tiny "planet" where he lives. The little prince tells the narrator about his travels and his experiences on the Earth, where he meets a fox who teaches him about love and responsibility, and a snake who says he has the power to return him home. At the end of the story, the little prince dies after letting the snake bite him.

3 \_\_\_\_

Although it's a children's book, *The Little Prince* has several adult themes, including the idea that adults have lost the ability to be thankful for the important things in life.

4 \_\_\_\_

"It is only with the heart that one can see well. The essential (本质) is invisible (看不见的) to the eyes."

"Only children know what they are looking for."

5 \_\_\_\_

This is a touching story with a lot of wisdom. It's not surprising that it has become a classic!

### ▶ Listening

How do the people feel? Match the names with the feelings.

1 Patrick    a excited  
2 Vivian    b full  
3 Priscilla    c happy  
4 David    d nervous  
5 Eva    e surprised

## Vocabulary & Language Focus

**A** Look at the pictures and write the feelings.



1 Sara is e\_\_\_\_\_.



2 Tom is h\_\_\_\_\_.



3 Mr Li is a\_\_\_\_\_.



4 Ben is s\_\_\_\_\_.



5 Chris is w\_\_\_\_\_.



6 Kitty is u\_\_\_\_\_.

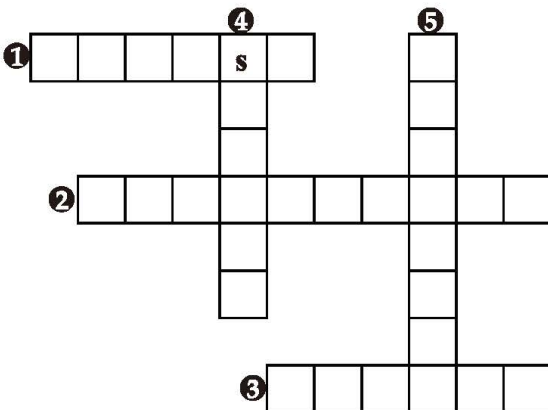
**B** Do the puzzle.

**Across** ➡

- 1 Someone who makes paintings
- 2 Not carefully
- 3 A wish that something had not happened

**Down** ⤴

- 4 Not speaking
- 5 Think about



**C** Translate the sentences into English.

- 1 我不明白你的意思。
- 2 我希望可以读得更快。
- 3 在聚会上，我没注意到他。
- 4 她把书包随手扔在了床上。
- 5 你为什么不尝试一下呢？
- 6 他在考虑接下来应该怎么做。
- 7 他问我最大的遗憾是什么。
- 8 这辆公共汽车在火车站和医院之间往返行驶。



 Reading

Read the article. Then answer the questions below.

### Mark Twain: a man of many words

Mark Twain is perhaps best known as the writer of classic American novels such as *The Adventures of Tom Sawyer* and *The Adventures of Huckleberry Finn*. However, during his life he also wrote many essays, and for this reason he is often quoted by English-language writers even today. Here are some of Mark Twain's most famous quotations (引语):

“If you tell the truth, you don't have to remember anything.”

“If you don't read the newspaper, you're uninformed (无知的); if you do read the newspaper, you're misinformed (被误导的).”

“Every generalization (一概而论) is false, including this one.”

“I was sorry to have my name mentioned as one of the great authors, because they have a habit of dying off. Chaucer is dead, Spencer is dead, so is Milton, so is Shakespeare, and I'm not feeling so well myself.”

Mark Twain was undoubtedly a man of many words. To put one of his quotations in different words, he would have written less, but he didn't have the time.

- 1 What two classic American novels did Mark Twain write?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Why is Twain still quoted by writers today?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 In the first quotation, why does Twain say that you don't have to remember anything if you tell the truth?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 In the second quotation, does Twain have a good or bad view of newspapers? Why?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 In the third quotation, what does “including this one” do to the meaning of the quotation?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 In the fourth quotation, who are Chaucer, Spencer, Milton and Shakespeare?  
\_\_\_\_\_

### Vocabulary & Language Focus

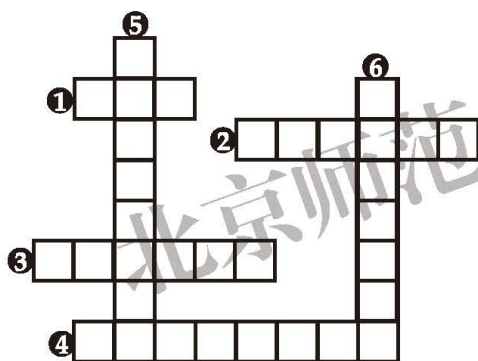
#### A Do the puzzle.

##### Across ➡

- 1 A weapon for shooting
- 2 Someone who produces art
- 3 A structure for crossing over a river, etc.
- 4 Someone who designs machines, etc.

##### Down ⬇

- 5 Someone who plays a musical instrument
- 6 The first person to invent or do something



#### C Translate the sentences into English.

- 1 他被认为是这个公司最有创意的人之一。
- 2 他的想法领先于他的时代。
- 3 她在2011年创作了这幅画。
- 4 我最喜欢的摄影师非常有名。
- 5 比尔是计算机领域的先驱。
- 6 我喜欢创作活动，如绘画和写作。
- 7 他让我对这个计划保密。
- 8 他的计划没有像他期望的那样成功。

#### B Complete the sentences. Circle the correct conjunctions.

- 1 Janet is so creative – she's good at drawing **since / because / and** she takes great photos too.
- 2 Matthew likes building things **because of / as / as well as** he's good with his hands.
- 3 Leonardo da Vinci was a scientist **as / as well as / since** an artist.
- 4 **Since / And / Because of** he wanted to keep his ideas secret, da Vinci wrote his diary in code.
- 5 **Because / As / Because of** products like Dreamweaver and FrontPage, you don't need to understand HTML to design a website.
- 6 I always say that my sister's favourite painting is her mirror, **because / as well as / because of** she spends so much time looking at it!



# Lesson 7

# Unit 3 Creativity

D Complete the article. Write a-f.

- |              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| a considered | b produced   |
| c discovery  | d well-known |
| e hundreds   | f inventor   |

The *Mona Lisa* is a painting by the artist and 1 \_\_\_ Leonardo da Vinci. Da Vinci created the painting between 1503 and 1506.

The *Mona Lisa*, a picture of a young woman, is 2 \_\_\_ to be the finest painting that da Vinci ever 3 \_\_\_. It is shown at the Louvre museum in Paris, where 4 \_\_\_ of people queue to see it every day.

One of the reasons the *Mona Lisa* is so famous is that it was stolen in 1911. The 5 \_\_\_ of this case made the police believe that the 6 \_\_\_ poet Guillaume Apollinaire stole the painting. However, the real thief was an employee of the Louvre.

## Reading

Read the texts and answer the questions.

1

**Tim Berners-Lee** is a British computer scientist. A professor at the MIT in the USA, Berners-Lee is famous for inventing the World Wide Web. He is one of the 24 members of the Order of Merit, a title awarded by Queen Elizabeth II.

What did Tim Berners-Lee invent?

---

2

### Today's TV Tip

*Steve Jobs: Billion Dollar Hippy*  
Evan Davies looks at the man who built one of the world's largest companies from a garage in California. Interviews with Steve Wozniak, Tim Berners-Lee and other leading figures in the computer industry help us understand this creative man better.

What is the purpose of the programme?

---

3

**To:** Classes 1B, 2A & 3C

**From:** Mr Smith

Please note that since Miss Green will be away next Monday, her Art classes that day will be taken by Mr Brown (Periods 1-2), Mrs Black (Periods 4-5) and Mr White (Periods 6-7).

What is the note about?

---

## Listening

What inventions is the girl talking about? Listen and label the pictures (1-3). Then write the name of the inventions.



\_\_\_\_\_



\_\_\_\_\_



\_\_\_\_\_

# Unit 3 Creativity

## Lesson 8

### Vocabulary & Language Focus

**A** Complete the sentences. Use these words:

disadvantage   dangers   energy  
polluted   pollution   provides

- \_\_\_\_\_ is a serious problem in many of the world's cities.
- New technology \_\_\_\_\_ us with many benefits.
- One of the \_\_\_\_\_ of spending too much time on the Internet is that you can lose touch with other people.
- There are many new ways of producing \_\_\_\_\_ - for example, wind and solar power.
- One \_\_\_\_\_ of this job is that you have to travel a lot.
- Jane doesn't swim in the lake anymore because the water is \_\_\_\_\_.

**B** Match the sentence-halves. Write *a-e*.

1 Green technologies are good	___	a nuclear power is too dangerous.
2 I disagree with	___	b but they're not enough to meet all our energy needs.
3 I'm against the idea of	___	c are always beneficial to society.
4 In my opinion, new inventions	___	d the view that pollution is unavoidable.
5 I support the position that	___	e supporting companies that pollute the environment.

**C** Translate the sentences into English.



- 核能可能导致危险。
- 今天的英语课上，我们进行了一场关于科技的辩论。
- 你认为核能足够安全吗？  
—我不这么认为。
- 污染问题对每个人都重要。
- 从李佳开始吧。
- 绿色科技可以给我们提供安全的能源。



 Reading

Read the article. Then answer the questions below.

### Are computer games really that bad?

We all know the arguments against letting our kids play computer games — they're a waste of time; kids can't stop playing them; kids are less social; and they can lead to health problems related to, for example, the back and hands. But are computer games really as bad as people think?

Not if you believe the experts. According to them, playing computer games can actually be beneficial to children. Among the benefits of playing computer games are an increase in self-confidence and creativity, an improvement in multitasking and motor skills, better concentration and decision-making, and a way to relax. Computer games also introduce kids to computer technology and the online world, and they give their brains real exercise as well. Some games will even give their bodies a workout too.

So the next time your children ask you if they can play a computer game, why don't you just let them? Or, better still, why don't you play it with them? You never know. You might benefit from it as well.

- 1 What is the topic of the article?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 In the first paragraph, how many arguments against the topic does the writer list?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 According to the article, what kind of health problems can computer games lead to?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 According to the article, what do the experts think about computer games?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 In the second paragraph, what is the first benefit of playing computer games that the writer mentions?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 In the final paragraph, who is the writer talking to?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 7 What is the writer's overall attitude towards playing computer games?  
\_\_\_\_\_

### Vocabulary & Language Focus

**A Complete the sentences. Use these words:**

connected      cover      fingers  
fit                  bear      wet

- 1 Wristies are designed to stop your hands getting \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Wristies are good for people who use their \_\_\_\_\_ when they work.
- 3 If it's cold, you should always \_\_\_\_\_ your head.
- 4 I can't \_\_\_\_\_ to swim in cold water.
- 5 Jack \_\_\_\_\_ the speakers to his computer.
- 6 I like that coat but it doesn't \_\_\_\_\_ me.

**C Translate the sentences into English.**

- 1 手腕套是没有独立手指部分的手套。
- 2 天气很冷，妈妈穿上了她的厚大衣。
- 3 他天生是个厨师。
- 4 天气太热了，他无法忍受。
- 5 她的眼里含着泪水。
- 6 我和我哥哥毫无共同之处。
- 7 因为一次意外，她产生了一个新的想法。

**B Match the sentence halves. Write a-h.**

1 Children are good inventors	—	a as creativity is very important.
2 Creativity is very important,	—	b because they're naturally creative.
3 Kids should be encouraged to use their imagination	—	c I want to be more creative.
4 The cause of Apple's success was	—	d I've become more creative.
5 The effect of wearing Wristies was that	—	e it's important to wear a hat when it's cold.
6 The reason I go to exhibitions is that	—	f my hands stayed nice and dry.
7 The result of going to Art classes is that	—	g Steve Jobs' creativity.
8 Since a lot of body heat can be lost through the head,	—	h so we should all try to learn from creative people.



D Complete the article. Write *a-h*.

- |             |                |
|-------------|----------------|
| a business  | b concentrates |
| c connected | d creative     |
| e invented  | f kids         |
| g runs      | h refers       |

**Hats off to Snap Caps Founder**

At 16, Maddie Bradshaw is already a millionaire thanks to M3 Girl Designs, the company she 1 \_\_\_ with her mother and younger sister. The company is the maker of Snap Caps, which 2 \_\_\_ to a collection of necklaces made from bottle caps linked to a string.

Bradshaw 3 \_\_\_ Smart Caps after decorating her locker with painted bottle caps at the age of ten. Her friends loved the bottle caps, so she made some more, 4 \_\_\_ each one to a piece of string, and sold them. And the rest is history.

Now Bradshaw 5 \_\_\_ on coming up with 6 \_\_\_ new designs for Smart Caps. She has also written a book for other 7 \_\_\_ who want to set up their own 8 \_\_\_.

## ▶ Reading

Put the sentences into the correct place in the article. Write *A-E*.

- A** However, Nissen first had the idea of stretching canvas (帆布) over a steel frame (支架) six years earlier, when he was only 16.
- B** In 2000, trampolining became an Olympic sport.
- C** Nissen and Griswold originally called their invention the "bouncing rig" (弹跳架).
- D** Nissen and Griswold decided to use this word as the name of their invention and, in 1941, set up a company producing trampolines.
- E** Some examples of inventions that have entered the English language in this way are pot noodles, post-it notes and popsicles.

**Jumping for joy!**

One of the greatest achievements for any inventor is when their invention is so popular that its name becomes the general word for that product. 1 \_\_\_ Another is the trampoline (蹦床).

The first modern trampoline was built by George Nissen and Larry Griswold in 1936. 2 \_\_\_ Nissen and Griswold were gymnasts at the University of Iowa, and they thought that their invention would be useful in training.

3 \_\_\_ However, Nissen changed the name to "trampoline" after hearing the Spanish word trampolin, meaning "diving board", while on a show of their product in Mexico. 4 \_\_\_

5 \_\_\_ And at the age of 94, Nissen was able to travel to Beijing to watch the trampoline event at the 2008 Summer Olympics.

## ▶ Listening

Listen to the dialogue and read the statements. Write *T* (True) or *F* (False).

- Clare is reading about creativity because she wants to be an artist. \_\_\_\_\_
- Creativity is important for everyone as it's about finding new ways to solve problems. \_\_\_\_\_
- Clare uses mind maps because she has more ideas now. \_\_\_\_\_
- The effect of using the "six hats" technique is that you see a problem from different points of view. \_\_\_\_\_

## Vocabulary & Language Focus

**A** Complete the sentences. Use these words:

air	breaks	connect
drop	tie	weak

- 1 In space things don't fall to the floor when you \_\_\_\_\_ them.
- 2 Water \_\_\_\_\_ into small drops in space.
- 3 When you're in space, if you don't \_\_\_\_\_ things down, they float away.
- 4 Astronauts do a lot of exercise in space so that they don't become \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 Humans can't breathe the \_\_\_\_\_ in space.
- 6 At the International Space Station, astronauts can \_\_\_\_\_ to the Internet.

**C** Translate the sentences into English.

- 1 明天我可以骑自行车去上学，而不用走着去了。
- 2 他把衣服挂在了绳子上。
- 3 没有人想在太空中受伤。
- 4 航天员用闹钟来唤醒他们。
- 5 在太空中，简单的动作可能会变得困难。
- 6 在太空也不完全都是艰苦的工作。
- 7 太阳从东边升起，西边落下。

**B** Rewrite the sentences using *so ... that* or *so that*.

Katy's alarm wakes up everyone in the flat because it's so loud.

*Katy's alarm is so loud that it wakes up everyone in the flat.*

- 1 Astronauts receive a lot of training to be able to deal with life in space.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 In space even heavy things can float away because everything is so light.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Astronauts have special plates to help them eat in space.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 The container is light so it floats on water.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Daniel turned on his computer because he wanted to connect to the Internet.  
\_\_\_\_\_



## Lesson 10

# Unit 4 Space

**D** Complete the article. Write *a-h*.

a a little   b as well   c astronauts  
d woke   e experiments   f floats  
g gravity   h muscles

15th January, 2012  
Another busy day at the International Space Station! My alarm 1 \_\_\_ me up at 6 am. I had breakfast with the other two 2 \_\_\_ and then exercised for an hour (you have to work so hard to keep your 3 \_\_\_ strong in space!). At 7:30 we had a short meeting to plan the day. This morning I had to do some 4 \_\_\_, and in the afternoon I had to put all our food into special containers. At 8 pm we all had dinner together. Eating in zero 5 \_\_\_ still seems really strange, as if you're not careful, your food just 6 \_\_\_ away! After dinner we had 7 \_\_\_ time to relax. But we were all in bed by 9:30, as tomorrow is going to be a busy day 8 \_\_\_!

### Listening

What do the astronauts need to do?  
Listen and number the tasks (1–5).

They need to ...

- a \_\_\_ do some exercise.
- b \_\_\_ do some experiments.
- c \_\_\_ fix the alarms.
- d \_\_\_ tie down some tools.
- e \_\_\_ write a report.

### Reading

Put the sentences into the correct place in the text. Write A-E.

- A Since then it has been fully used without a break.
- B The astronauts spend their time on the space station doing experiments and testing spacecraft.
- C The International Space Station (ISS) is a space station that is circling Earth at a height of 330–410 kilometres.
- D The programme is paid for until 2020.
- E The US section is shared by the other three agencies in the programme.

### The International Space Station

1 \_\_\_ The space station goes around Earth 15 times every day.

The ISS programme is a project among five space agencies: the USA's National Aeronautics and Space Administration, the Russian Federal Space Agency, the Japan Aerospace Exploration Agency, the European Space Agency and the Canadian Space Agency. 2 \_\_\_ However, the space station may be in operation until as late as 2028.

The ISS is the ninth space station that is suitable for humans. It is divided into two parts: the Russian section and the US section. 3 \_\_\_

The first part of the ISS was launched in 1998. 4 \_\_\_ During this time the space station has been visited by astronauts from 15 different countries. 5 \_\_\_

## Vocabulary & Language Focus

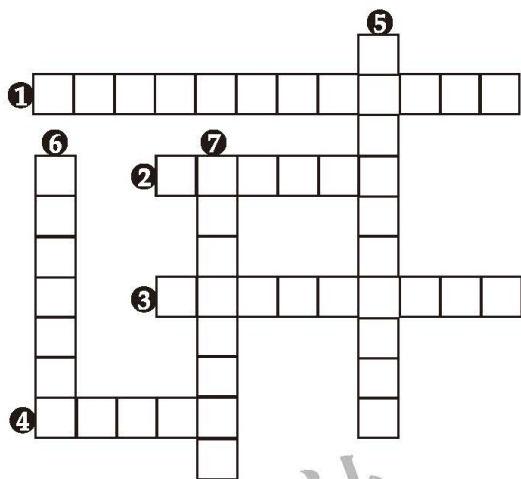
### A Do the puzzle.

#### Across ➡

- 1 Things that you do successfully
- 2 Send a spacecraft into space
- 3 A machine in space for communications
- 4 The area outside Earth

#### Down ⬇

- 5 New machines from modern knowledge
- 6 Actions trying to do something difficult
- 7 Moved forward



### B Complete the sentences. Use these words:

nearly      briefly      followed  
pleasure      achievement      spacecraft

- 1 Tell me \_\_\_\_\_ what happened.
- 2 An earthquake is sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ by a huge fire.
- 3 Shenzhou 5 was the first Chinese \_\_\_\_\_ that was suitable for humans.
- 4 This machine is a great scientific \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 She \_\_\_\_\_ lost one eye in the accident.
- 6 A: Thanks for telling me all about China's space programme.  
B: My \_\_\_\_\_.

### C Translate the sentences into English.

- 1 简单地说，中国的太空研究正在飞速发展。
- 2 “东方红”是中国一种卫星的名字。
- 3 神舟飞船包括无人飞船和载人飞船。
- 4 天宫一号是中国的第一个太空站。
- 5 东方红一号于1970年被送入太空。
- 6 刘洋是中国第一位进入太空的女航天员。
- 7 中国的科学家从未放弃。
- 8 感谢您来到我们的节目。



 Reading

Read the article. Then answer the questions below.

**Liu Yang: China's first woman in space**

Mao Zedong once said that "Women hold up half the sky." So it should come as no surprise that China is now including female astronauts in its rapidly developing space programme.

China's first woman in space was Liu Yang, a major (少校) in the People's Liberation Army (PLA) Air Force. Liu was one of the three astronauts on board the Shenzhou 9 spacecraft when it was launched from the Jiuquan Satellite Launch Centre in Gansu Province on 16 June, 2012. While in space, Liu carried out experiments in space medicine, before landing back in Inner Mongolia 13 days after the launch.

Liu was born in 1978 in Zhengzhou, Henan Province. She joined the PLA Air Force in 1997. Some 13 years later, she was chosen to work in China's space programme, and after two years of difficult training she finally travelled into space. Liu said before the launch of Shenzhou 9, "I feel honoured to fly into space on behalf of (代表) hundreds of millions of female Chinese citizens."

Liu now lives in Beijing with her husband. Her hobbies are reading and cooking.

1 What did Mao Zedong mean when he said that "Women hold up half the sky"?

---

2 How many astronauts travelled into space with Liu on Shenzhou 9?

---

3 When did Liu return to Earth?

---

4 When was Liu recruited into China's space programme?

---

5 What are Liu's hobbies?

---

6 What is the purpose of the article?

---

## Vocabulary & Language Focus

**A** Match the words with the definitions. Write *a-g*.

1 alive	___	a move safely down onto the ground
2 control	___	b an area of land in the country
3 field	___	c very large round object in space
4 land	___	d make someone or something do what you want
5 planet	___	e talk very loudly
6 shout	___	f remove a piece of clothing
7 take off	___	g still living

**B** Complete the sentences. Use these words:

planet got ready pick up  
top unusual knocked down

- The boy \_\_\_\_\_ to begin a dangerous expedition.
- It's \_\_\_\_\_ for Lisa to be late for school.
- The moon is a satellite, and the Earth is a \_\_\_\_\_.
- Many parents \_\_\_\_\_ their children from school every day.
- There's a wonderful view from the \_\_\_\_\_ of the mountain.
- The boxer was \_\_\_\_\_ three times in the match.

**C** Translate the sentences into English.

- 电视机出了故障。
- 宇宙中有成千上万的恒星。
- 没有人知道其他行星上的生物是什么样子的。
- 我不知道这个作家是否还活着。
- 他们登上山顶，看到了奇异的景色。
- 关于外星人的电影会令她感到不舒服。
- 山上空气清新。



## D Complete the article. Use these words:

across aliens fields huge land planets spaceships unknown unusual

**The mystery of crop (庄稼) circles**  
 In the 1970s something  
 1 \_\_\_\_\_ happened in the  
 English countryside: crop circles  
 started appearing in the  
 2 \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Crop circles are 3 \_\_\_\_\_  
 shapes created by the flattening (压  
 倒) of crops 4 \_\_\_\_\_ the land.  
 Some people believe that these  
 shapes show that 5 \_\_\_\_\_  
 exist. The circles, they claim, are  
 made when 6 \_\_\_\_\_ from other  
 7 \_\_\_\_\_ come down to  
 8 \_\_\_\_\_ on Earth.  
 The cause of the crop circles in  
 England remained 9 \_\_\_\_\_  
 until 1991, when Doug Bower  
 and Dave Chorley claimed  
 responsibility for them. Crop circles  
 are now considered works of art,  
 and are even used in advertising.

## ▶ Reading

Read the texts and answer the questions.

1

*Alan the Alien* is a heart-warming story by the best-selling children's author Ella Wood. Alan, an alien boy who comes to Earth to learn about human society, travels the planet and discovers many problems facing the environment. A touching story with a clear green message ...

Why did Ella Wood write *Alan the Alien*?

---

2

### Man fined for crop circles

A 29-year-old man charged with criminal damage as a result of making a crop circle was fined £100 by a court in England yesterday. Matthew Williams, of Bishop Canning in southwest England, was also ordered to pay £40.

How much money did Matthew Williams have to pay?

---

3

### TV Highlights

#### *The X-Files: I Want to Believe*

In this 2008 film, the second to be based on the popular science fiction TV series, ex-FBI special agents (特工) Mulder and Scully return to investigate the mysterious kidnapping (绑架) of an FBI agent.

What type of programme is *The X-Files: I Want to Believe*?

---



## ▶ Listening

Listen and choose the best answer.

- What kind of film are they talking about?  
 a funny films    b space films    c cartoon films
- Who are the two main characters?  
 a Helen and Joe    b Daisy and John  
 c Sara and Mark
- Which film does the girl like?  
 a the film about another planet  
 b the film with a monster  
 c the film about space prison

## Vocabulary & Language Focus

**A** Complete the sentences. Use these words:

conversation manager passengers  
reached silence strangers

- 1 There was \_\_\_\_\_ when Mr Li entered the classroom.
- 2 There were lots of \_\_\_\_\_ on the bus this morning.
- 3 By the time I \_\_\_\_\_ home, it was already quite late.
- 4 Jess never talks to \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 The \_\_\_\_\_ of the new restaurant is very friendly.
- 6 When Miss Chan was explaining the homework, Chris and Ellen were having a \_\_\_\_\_.

**C** Translate the sentences into English.

- 1 回到家中后，她就说个不停。
- 2 他对这本书不感兴趣。
- 3 每天晚上她都盼着姐姐的电话。
- 4 他和邻居们相处得很好。
- 5 我决定去纽约上大学。
- 6 你想说什么就说什么。
- 7 在郊外旅行，你应该欣赏景色。
- 8 我想你是对的。

**B** Rewrite the sentences using *who* or *which*.

- 1 *Anne of Green Gables* is the novel that made L.M. Montgomery famous.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 Anne Shirley is the orphan that Matthew and Marilla Cuthbert adopt.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 Green Gables is the farmhouse that Matthew and Marilla live in.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 Diana Barry is the girl that becomes Anne's best friend.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Miss Muriel Stacey is the teacher that encourages Anne to develop her character.  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 6 *Anne of Avonlea* is the book that L.M. Montgomery wrote after *Anne of Green Gables*.  
\_\_\_\_\_



**D Complete the blog. Use these words:**

as soon as braids carriage characters especially journey lovely novel thick

Sue's  
BLOG



I've just got back from Prince Edward Island in Canada, where Lucy Maud Montgomery, the author of *Anne of Green Gables*, grew up. It was a long 1 \_\_\_\_\_, but I had a 2 \_\_\_\_\_ time. Prince Edward Island is great, 3 \_\_\_\_\_ the Green Gables farmhouse. We also visited Balsam Hollow (a forest) and Campbell Pond (a lake), both of which are described in the 4 \_\_\_\_\_. The next day we went to the Avonlea Theme Park, where you can dress up as one of the 5 \_\_\_\_\_ in the book. Of course, I dressed up as Anne, with an old brown hat and 6 \_\_\_\_\_ red 7 \_\_\_\_\_. Then I had my photo taken in a 8 \_\_\_\_\_! If you ever get the chance, go to Prince Edward Island. I might even see you there – I'm planning to go back 9 \_\_\_\_\_ I can!



**▶ Reading**

Read the passage. Match the paragraphs with the paragraph headings.

- |                         |              |
|-------------------------|--------------|
| a Writing career        | b Early life |
| c Later years           | d Adult life |
| e L.M. Montgomery today |              |

**Lucy Maud Montgomery**

Lucy Maud Montgomery was a Canadian author best known for the *Anne of Green Gables* series of novels.

1 \_\_\_\_\_

Montgomery was born in 1874 on Prince Edward Island. Her mother died when she was 21 months old, and at the age of seven she went to live with her grandparents.

2 \_\_\_\_\_

After studying literature at Dalhousie University, Montgomery worked as a teacher and began writing stories. In 1911, she married Edwin Simpson, a Presbyterian Minister. The couple moved to Leaskdale in Ontario, where they had two sons.

3 \_\_\_\_\_

In 1935, when Simpson retired, Montgomery moved to Swansea, Ontario. She stayed there until her death in 1942.

4 \_\_\_\_\_

During her lifetime Montgomery published 20 novels, over 500 short stories, an autobiography and a book of poetry. However, her fame is based on the novel *Anne of Green Gables*, which was published in 1908 and was followed by eight series of novels.

5 \_\_\_\_\_

Montgomery's works are now studied at the L.M. Montgomery Institute at the University of Prince Edward Island. Prince Edward Island has also become a popular tourist destination for fans of *Anne of Green Gables* from all over the world.

## Vocabulary & Language Focus

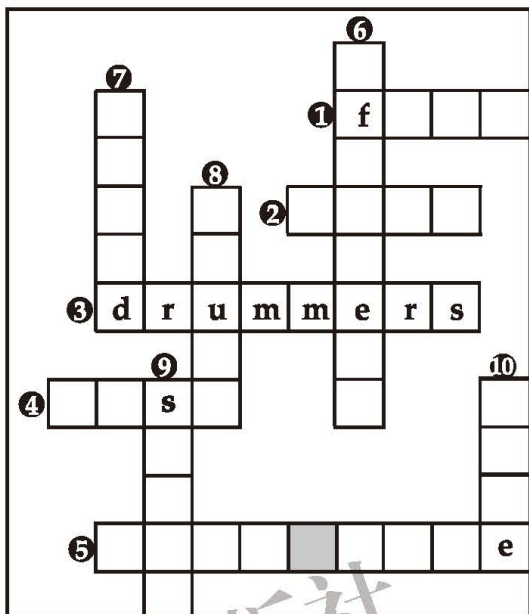
### A Do the puzzle.

#### Across ➡

- 1 Smooth and level
- 2 A man who rules a country
- 3 People who play the drums
- 4 A long pointed tooth
- 5 A long tube for putting water on fires

#### Down ⬇

- 6 People who give orders in the army
- 7 Someone whose job is to protect a person or place
- 8 The nose of an elephant
- 9 Having no holes or spaces inside
- 10 A long, thick length of string



### B Complete the sentences. Use these words:

at all	obviously	filled with
lift	round	trusted

- 1 Alex can \_\_\_\_\_ very heavy weights.
- 2 Yvonne isn't enjoying herself \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 The bucket was \_\_\_\_\_ sand.
- 4 There are lots of \_\_\_\_\_ tables in the new restaurant.
- 5 Some people just can't be \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 He was \_\_\_\_\_ drunk.

### C Translate the sentences into English.



- 1 从前，有一位非常聪明的国王。
- 2 大地被厚厚的积雪覆盖着。
- 3 显然，她今天非常累。
- 4 他总是跟他的同学争吵。
- 5 别信他的话。他总是说谎。
- 6 她摸了摸手包。
- 7 在节目中，他没有唱歌，而是跳了舞。
- 8 没有人听那个官员的命令。



**Reading**

**A** Put the sentences into the correct place in the article. Write *a–e*.

- a Belbin says that one person can perform more than one role in a team.
- b But why is this the case?
- c Every team, he claims, should have people performing nine different roles.
- d However, he believes that they will probably succeed if they do.
- e However, they will probably need to have at least three or four.

**The secret life of teams**

Every sports fan knows that the best team doesn't always win. **1** \_\_\_\_\_

In his classic management book *Management Teams*, Dr Meredith Belbin puts forward an answer. **2** \_\_\_\_\_ These are the roles of Plant (solving difficult problems), Resource Investigator (communicating outside the team), Coordinator (ensuring that everyone can play their part), Shaper (pushing for agreement and decisions), Monitor-Evaluator (judging different views), Team Worker (keeping good relationships), Implementer (creating systems to achieve goals), Completer / Finisher (ensuring quality and timeliness) and Specialist (bringing special knowledge).

**3** \_\_\_\_\_ Not all teams, therefore, need to have nine members. **4** \_\_\_\_\_

Belbin says, however, that some teams can work well without performing all nine team roles. **5** \_\_\_\_\_

**B** Solve the riddles.

**1**

I have two hands and a face,  
but I have no arms or legs.  
What am I?

Answer: A c \_\_\_\_\_

**2**

I cannot be seen.  
I weigh nothing.  
When you put me in a  
container, I make it lighter.  
What am I?

Answer: A h \_\_\_\_\_

**3**

I am a room but I have  
No doors or windows.  
If you eat me,  
I taste delicious.  
What am I?

Answer: A m \_\_\_\_\_

### Vocabulary & Language Focus

**A** Match the words with the definitions. Write *a-h*.

- |              |     |   |
|--------------|-----|---|
| 1 alone      | ___ | a a set of books that tell stories about the same characters    |
| 2 direct     | ___ | b a solution to a problem                                       |
| 3 government | ___ | c happening without involving other people or things in between |
| 4 graduation | ___ | d an official rule for measurement                              |
| 5 related to | ___ | e by oneself  |
| 6 resolution | ___ | f connected with  |
| 7 series     | ___ | g the group of people who control a country                     |
| 8 standard   | ___ | h the time when you receive a university degree                 |

**B** Complete the sentences. Use these words:

standards came to has no idea  
separate comes from went on

- The idea for *Harry Potter* \_\_\_\_\_ J.K. Rowling in 1990.
- He \_\_\_\_\_ how to manage a company.
- The machine is slow and heavy by modern \_\_\_\_\_.
- This passage \_\_\_\_\_ his new book.
- Rowling \_\_\_\_\_ to become one of the most successful writers ever.
- The guards are trying to \_\_\_\_\_ the two men who are fighting.

**C** Translate the sentences into English.

- 她是一位很成功的作家。
- 家庭对他来说很重要。
- 这是她生活中的一段黑暗时期。
- 她认为，她的成功源自早期的失败。
- 她独自抚养了四个孩子。
- 他把所有精力都放在生意上了。
- 这项工程去年九月份竣工了。



## D Complete the blog. Write a-i.

- a energy    b graduates    c job  
 d marriage    e novel    f period  
 g raising    h set free    i speech

Ken's BLOG    

I've just read a really interesting article about J.K. Rowling. It talked about a 1 \_\_\_ she gave to some 2 \_\_\_ in the US in 2008.

In the speech Rowling talked about a difficult 3 \_\_\_ in her life, when she was writing the first *Harry Potter* 4 \_\_\_. At the time she was 5 \_\_\_ her daughter alone, as her 6 \_\_\_ had just ended. She also had no 7 \_\_\_.

Interestingly Rowling said that this difficult situation worked to her advantage, as she was able to put all her 8 \_\_\_ into writing. In her words, she was "9 \_\_\_".

I find this story really inspiring, don't you?

## ▶ Reading

Read the passage and put the events in time order. Write 1-7.

*Harry Potter* is a series of seven novels by the British author J.K. Rowling. The books tell the adventures of a young wizard (巫师), Harry Potter. The main story describes Harry's fight against the dark wizard Lord Voldemort, who he finally kills at the end of the series.

In the first book of the series, Harry becomes a student at Hogwarts School of Witchcraft (巫术) and Wizardry (魔法). There he learns that when he was a baby, he saw Voldemort kill his parents. He also makes friends with Ronald Weasley and Hermione Granger.

Later, in the final book of the series, Voldemort rises to power, and Harry and his friends fight his followers at the Battle of Hogwarts. By this time Harry is a very close friend of Ginny Weasley, Ronald's younger sister, whose life Harry saved in the second book in the series.

## ▶ Listening

Listen and put the events in time order. Write 1-4.

- Harry and his friends see their children off at the railway station.
- Harry and his friends sit on the back of a dragon.
- Lord Voldemort dies.
- Harry goes to die.

### Events in Harry Potter's life

	He makes friends with Ronald Weasley and Hermione Granger.
	He starts dating Ginny Weasley.
	He becomes a student at Hogwarts School of Witchcraft and Wizardry.
	He kills Voldemort.
	He saves Ginny Weasley's life.
	He sees Lord Voldemort kill his parents.
	He and his friends fight Voldemort's followers at the Battle of Hogwarts.

**Vocabulary & Language Focus**

**A** Complete the sentences. Use these words:

clever	proud	humorous
kind	patient	

- Mrs Hu always tries to help us with our studies, because she's \_\_\_\_\_.
- Terry is so \_\_\_\_\_ — he always does well in tests.
- Be \_\_\_\_\_ — he'll be here soon.
- Becky was very \_\_\_\_\_ of her achievements.
- When my grandpa made jokes, he showed how \_\_\_\_\_ he was.

**C** Translate the sentences into English.

- 姚明2002年进入NBA。
- 他刻苦的精神帮助他克服了困难。
- 他在休斯顿火箭队取得了巨大成功。
- 他再次打破了跳高的世界纪录。
- 他很有幽默感。
- 他做了很多慈善工作。
- 在中国他依然吸引着很多人。
- 他温和的性格帮助他赢得了队友们的尊重。

**B** Complete the sentences using the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- Diana wants to buy (want / buy) a bicycle.
- Tony is \_\_\_\_\_ (learn / play) the guitar.
- Helen has \_\_\_\_\_ (promise / come) to the cinema with me.
- Joe \_\_\_\_\_ (need / study) harder.
- Rachel will \_\_\_\_\_ (help / organise) the charity fair.
- Jeff is \_\_\_\_\_ (try / lose) weight.
- Mandy has \_\_\_\_\_ (decide / go) to Beijing next month.
- Sam \_\_\_\_\_ (agree / come) to my house yesterday.
- Mark is \_\_\_\_\_ (plan / travel) to the United States next year.



## D Complete the blog. Write a–g.

a player b character c role model  
d retired e cultural f humorous  
g respect



My 1 \_\_\_ is the basketball player Yao Ming. I like him not only because he was a brilliant 2 \_\_\_ but also because he's a person of great 3 \_\_\_.

For example, when he first went to the United States, Yao had to overcome language and 4 \_\_\_ problems, but he still played well for his team, the Houston Rockets. He also dealt with unfriendly comments by Shaquille O'Neill, a famous basketball player, in a clever and 5 \_\_\_ way.

Yao 6 \_\_\_ in 2011, but he's still treated with great 7 \_\_\_ by people all over China, and all over the world too.

Who's your role model? Let me know!

## Listening

Listen to the conversation. Write the correct answer a, b or c.

- Tonight Rick wants to \_\_\_\_.
  - go to the cinema
  - watch TV
  - play basketball
- Rick likes the Lakers because \_\_\_\_.
  - Jeremy Lin plays for them
  - Kobe Bryant plays for them
  - they're better than the New York Knicks
- Alice likes Jeremy Lin because she thinks \_\_\_\_.
  - he's cute
  - he has a nice personality
  - he never gives up

## Reading

Read the passage. Match the paragraphs with the paragraph headings. Write a–e.

a Achievements b Famous players  
c History d Ownership  
e Team information

## Houston Rockets

The Houston Rockets are an American basketball team. They play in the Southwest Division (西南分区) of the Western Conference (西部) in the National Basketball Association (NBA).

1 \_\_\_

The Rockets were founded in 1967 in San Diego, and made their first appearance in the NBA playoffs (季后赛) in 1969. In 1971 the franchise (职业运动队) moved to Houston, and in 2008 the Rockets went on the second-longest winning streak (连胜) in NBA history.

2 \_\_\_

The Rockets have won four division titles (1977, 1986, 1993 and 1994), four conference titles (1981, 1986, 1994 and 1995) and two championships (1994 and 1995).

3 \_\_\_

The Rockets are owned by Leslie Alexander, who in 2011 was one of the 400 richest people in the US. Alexander bought the franchise for \$85 million in 1993.

4 \_\_\_

The Rockets play their home games at the Toyota Center in Houston, Texas. The team colours are red, white and black.

5 \_\_\_

The Rockets' highest ever points scorer was Hakeem Olajuwon, who played for the team from 1984 to 2001. Yao Ming, the Chinese star who played for the Rockets from 2002 to 2011, is the highest-scoring player in recent years.

## Vocabulary & Language Focus

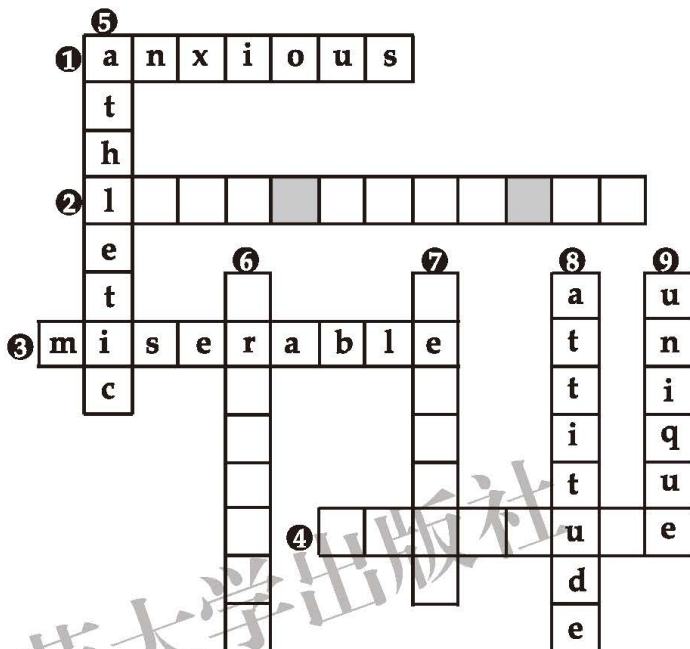
### A Do the puzzle.

#### Across ➡

- 1 Worried
- 2 Think you are better than someone else
- 3 Very unhappy
- 4 Care about something very special

#### Down ⬇

- 5 Strong and sporty
- 6 First
- 7 No longer working
- 8 Way of thinking
- 9 The only one of its kind



### B Complete the sentences. Use these words:

anyone as long as excellent  
treasure example prefers to

- 1 Daniel is an \_\_\_\_\_ athlete.
- 2 Julie never complains about \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3 Kevin likes basketball, but he \_\_\_\_\_ play football.
- 4 I \_\_\_\_\_ the opportunity of visiting my grandparents.
- 5 Richard can go wherever he likes at the weekend, \_\_\_\_\_ he tells his parents.
- 6 My sister sets a good \_\_\_\_\_ for me.

### C Translate the sentences into English.

- 1 我爷爷九十多岁了。
- 2 汤姆上周数学考试没及格。
- 3 不要瞧不起别人。
- 4 他是一位天才网球手。
- 5 我奶奶教小孩子弹钢琴。
- 6 她给所有教师树立了一个好榜样。
- 7 他总是按计划做事。



**Reading**

Read the article. Then answer the questions below.

When Li Na won the French Open in June 2011, it looked as if it might be the first of many international titles for China's top female tennis player. But the rest of the year was less than perfect for Li, who was knocked out in the second round of Wimbledon before losing in the first round of the American Open.

Commenting on this period, Li said that she had "a total loss of confidence". However, she fought back in 2012, reaching the fourth round of both the Australian Open and the French Open, and rising back to Number 11 in the Women's Tennis Association (WTA) rankings (排名).

Li still needs to improve if she is to return to the heights of 2011, when she reached number four in the WTA rankings. However, even if she fails to do this, she will remain the first Chinese tennis player to appear in a Grand Slam singles final (决赛) (the Australian Open in 2011), the first Chinese tennis player to win a Grand Slam singles title (the French Open in 2011), and the first Chinese tennis player to reach the top 10 of the WTA rankings (number four in 2011).

Li has lived a successful life off the court as well. Married to fellow tennis player Jiang Shan, Li was awarded a degree in journalism (新闻学) from Huazhong University of Science and Technology in 2009.

Li's hard work on and off the court has won her praise from the Chinese media, and has made her a role model for Chinese young people, whether they play tennis or not.

1 When did Li Na win the French Open?

---

2 In paragraph 2, what does "WTA" stand for?

---

3 According to paragraph 3, what does the writer think about Li's tennis career?

---

4 Why does the writer think that Li has also been successful off the court?

---

5 What does the writer appreciate most about Li?

---

6 What is the main idea of the article?

---

## Vocabulary & Language Focus

**A** What kind of person do the adjectives describe? Write *a-h*.

- |              |     |   |
|--------------|-----|---|
| 1 blunt      | ___ | a someone who achieves his or her goals               |
| 2 calm       | ___ | b someone who doesn't like waiting                    |
| 3 creative   | ___ | c someone who is hard to get along with               |
| 4 difficult  | ___ | d someone who is intelligent                          |
| 5 famous     | ___ | e someone who is known by many people in many places  |
| 6 impatient  | ___ | f someone who is relaxed and quiet                    |
| 7 smart      | ___ | g someone who speaks in an honest but rather rude way |
| 8 successful | ___ | h someone who uses their imagination to make things   |

**B** Complete the sentences. Use these words:

a number of   afford   education  
given up   making money  
put up with   fired

- Steve Jobs was \_\_\_\_\_ by his mother soon after his birth.
- Jobs's parents couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ to give him a university \_\_\_\_\_.
- Jobs couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ anything that wasn't perfect.
- When Jobs returned to Apple, the company wasn't \_\_\_\_\_.
- He was \_\_\_\_\_ because he was not honest.
- Apple have created \_\_\_\_\_ wonderful products.

**C** Translate the sentences into English.

- 那所学校很适合我。
- 他于2006年成立该公司。
- 我们现在买不起大房子。
- 他们的产品设计总是很出色。
- 她曾面对许多困难，但她从不放弃。
- 该公司出品了一些很好的电影。
- 我们的产品销量惊人。



### D Complete the review. Write a–h.

- a wonderful    b difficult    c digital  
 d everyday    e fired    f leader  
 g return    h valuable

#### No news on the billion dollar hippy (嬉皮士)

*Steve Jobs: Billion Dollar Hippy* is a profile of Steve Jobs, the man who made 1 \_\_\_\_ products part of our 2 \_\_\_\_ lives.

Famously 3 \_\_\_\_ from his own company in 1985, Jobs was undoubtedly a 4 \_\_\_\_ man. Nevertheless, his record as a business 5 \_\_\_\_ is second to none. In addition to making Apple one of the most 6 \_\_\_\_ companies in the world after his 7 \_\_\_\_ in 1995, Jobs also helped to develop Pixar, the company that changed the face of animation.

In this documentary (纪录片), Evan Davis talks to a 8 \_\_\_\_ range of people who knew Jobs well. However, there really isn't anything new here for true Apple fans.

### Listening

What do the children think about Steve Jobs? Write a–f.

- |                |             |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1 Belinda ____ | a clever    |
| 2 Chris ____   | b creative  |
| 3 Fiona ____   | c impatient |
| 4 Henry ____   | d serious   |
| 5 Lisa ____    | e strong    |
| 6 Tom ____     | f wise      |

### Reading

Read the comments about the review of *Steve Jobs: Billion Dollar Hippy*. Then answer the questions.

1

appman  
23rd July 2012 – 09:36

I think this review is rather unfair. In my opinion the documentary was very informative. I'd definitely recommend it to anyone who's interested in Steve Jobs or Apple.

What does the writer think of the review?

---

2

ifan33  
23rd July 2012 – 09:53

I agree. I think the documentary's excellent. In fact I wouldn't be surprised if it won an award. This is just the type of programme that the BBC does so well. Well done, Evan Davis!

What does the writer think of the documentary?

---

3

no2apps  
23rd July 2012 – 10:28

Hey, who likes Steve Jobs anyway? If the business world was the school playground, Jobs would have been the school bully (恶霸). And that's all there is to say really.

What does the writer think of Steve Jobs?

---

# Unit 7 Journeys

## Lesson 19

### Vocabulary & Language Focus

**A** Complete the sentences. Use these words:

ancient, arrived in, silk, went on, played an important role, goes through

- 1 In ancient times \_\_\_\_\_ from China was popular throughout Asia and Europe.
- 2 Chinese traders \_\_\_\_\_ an \_\_\_\_\_ in the development of the Silk Road.
- 3 We started our journey in the \_\_\_\_\_ capital of Xi'an.
- 4 From there we \_\_\_\_\_ to Wuwei.
- 5 Next we \_\_\_\_\_ the city of Yumenguan.
- 6 The railway \_\_\_\_\_ the desert and reaches the sea.

**C** Translate the sentences into English.

- 1 我对丝绸之路的历史很感兴趣。
- 2 丝绸之路对于中国的发展起到了重要的作用。
- 3 西安是中国古都之一。
- 4 这座城市坐落在沙漠边缘。
- 5 在这个城市里，你可以看到许多艺术作品。
- 6 沿着丝绸之路，有许多不同的货物交易进行。
- 7 这座桥把这两个城市连在了一起。

**B** Complete the sentences with the correct articles. If no article is needed, put an X.

- 1 Tim is \_\_\_\_\_ member of our school basketball team.
- 2 Debbie is \_\_\_\_\_ excellent volleyball player.
- 3 Julie is \_\_\_\_\_ best player in our school football team.
- 4 Matt won \_\_\_\_\_ first race this morning.
- 5 He just beat \_\_\_\_\_ Jeff.
- 6 Mary saw \_\_\_\_\_ exciting show yesterday.
- 7 Karen was \_\_\_\_\_ only person who wasn't ill last week.
- 8 Gary is going to travel to \_\_\_\_\_ Hong Kong next month.
- 9 Emma wants to visit \_\_\_\_\_ Great Wall one day.



**D** Complete the blog with the correct articles. If no article is needed, put an X.

Sue's BLOG    

I've just come back from 1 \_\_\_ long weekend in 2 \_\_\_ Xi'an with my family. We had 3 \_\_\_ really great time there!

On 4 \_\_\_ first day, we went on 5 \_\_\_ tour of 6 \_\_\_ old city wall. Then we climbed up 7 \_\_\_ Giant White Goose Pagoda. It was 8 \_\_\_ hard climb, but 9 \_\_\_ views were fantastic!

On 10 \_\_\_ second day, we went to see 11 \_\_\_ Terracotta Army at 12 \_\_\_ Mausoleum (陵墓) of Qin Shi Huang. It was amazing! In fact, it's one of 13 \_\_\_ most amazing things I've ever seen!

I hope one day you can all go to 14 \_\_\_ Xi'an too. It's such 15 \_\_\_ interesting place to visit!

## Listening

Which place is the speaker talking about? Listen and label the pictures (1–3).



## Reading

Read the texts and answer the questions.

1

### Itinerary for HK Sightseeing Tour

Sat	am	Po Lin Monastery
	pm	Hong Kong Disneyland
Sun	am	The Peak
	pm	Ocean Park

Where will the tour go on Sunday morning?

2

### TV Highlights (精彩剧情)

*Anthony Bourdain: No Reservations*  
In this episode of the award-winning food and travel show, chef Anthony Bourdain returns to Cambodia (柬埔寨) to discover how much has changed after ten years, not only in the country but also within himself.

Which country is the TV show about?

3

To: Class 3C  
From: Mr Zhou  
Trip to the Forbidden Palace  
For our trip to the Forbidden Palace on Saturday, the bus will leave the school car park at 8 am sharp. We will stay at the Forbidden Palace until 2:45 pm, and return to the school about two hours later.

ZYM

What time will the students return to the school?





 Reading
**Life Is an Adventure**

By Andrew Mitchell

Life is an adventure.  
Full of highs and lows.  
And what's around the corner  
No one really knows.

Life is an adventure.  
There are always ups and downs.  
Success and failure come and go,  
Leaving smiles as well as frowns.

Life is an adventure.  
With many choices to make.  
Making the wrong choice now and then  
Is a risk we have to take.

Life is an adventure.  
Our destiny's unknown.  
All we can do is plant our seeds.  
And enjoy them when they've grown.

1	Title:	
2	Writer:	
3	Number of verses:	
4	Number of lines in each verse:	
5	Metaphor:	

### Vocabulary & Language Focus

A Label the map.



- 1 North Am \_\_\_\_\_      2 Eu \_\_\_\_\_      3 As \_\_\_\_\_      4 Af \_\_\_\_\_  
 5 Pa \_\_\_\_\_ Ocean      6 S \_\_\_\_\_ America      7 At \_\_\_\_\_ Ocean  
 8 In \_\_\_\_\_ O \_\_\_\_\_      9 Au \_\_\_\_\_

B Complete the sentences. Use these words:

against    awful    proper    made sure  
ocean    protect    whenever

- Aaron \_\_\_\_\_ he revised properly for the test.
- Zoe gets bad-tempered \_\_\_\_\_ she's hungry.
- I always need to \_\_\_\_\_ myself \_\_\_\_\_ the cold at the South Pole.
- Dogs make an \_\_\_\_\_ noise when they howl.
- An \_\_\_\_\_ is a very large sea.
- Use \_\_\_\_\_ language when you are with ladies.

C Translate the sentences into English.

- 我们距离山顶还有两百米。
- 站在南极上的感觉棒极了。
- 最难的部分是保护脚。
- 与南极的冬季相比，亚洲的冬季根本不算什么。
- 南极的气温总是在零度以下。
- 尽管有时没有足够的食物，这次的行程仍然一直令人兴奋。



 Reading

Read the article. Match the paragraphs with the paragraph headings. Write *a–e*.

- a A long, long night
- b Alone for half a year
- c Is it really that bad?
- d Minus what?
- e What's in the name?

### The Toughest Job in the World

If you think your job's tough, spare a thought for the people working at the Amundsen-Scott South Pole Station (ASSPS).

1 \_\_\_\_

The ASSPS is named after Roald Amundsen and Robert F. Scott, the two explorers in the race to be the first men to reach the South Pole. In case you've forgotten, none of the men in Scott's expedition ever made it back.

2 \_\_\_\_

Survival isn't really an issue at the ASSPS though. However, getting through the winter certainly is. At the South Pole winter means six months of non-stop darkness.

3 \_\_\_\_

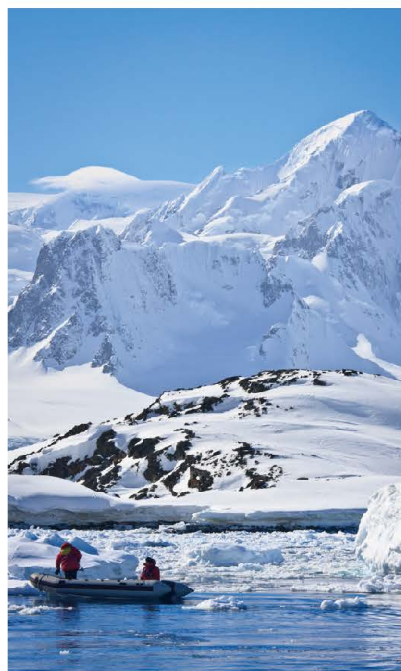
About 50 people spend the winter at the ASSPS. During this time, they're completely cut off from the outside world, as it's dangerous to fly to the station between February and October.

4 \_\_\_\_

The same weather that separates the ASSPS in winter makes life extremely difficult for the people working there. Temperatures can be as low as  $-80^{\circ}\text{C}$ , and storms are common.

5 \_\_\_\_

So the next time you feel like complaining about your job, think again. After all you could be working at the ASSPS.



## Vocabulary & Language Focus

**A** Complete the sentences. Use these words:

antibiotics	awarded	metal
skin	suitcase	wood

- X-rays cannot go through bones or \_\_\_\_\_.
- Paper is usually made from \_\_\_\_\_.
- Doctors use \_\_\_\_\_ to treat many different diseases.
- Wilhelm Roentgen was \_\_\_\_\_ the Nobel Prize in Physics in 1901.
- All my old clothes are stored in a \_\_\_\_\_ at home.
- Suzie has very dark \_\_\_\_\_.

**C** Translate the sentences into English.

- 1 抗生素和X射线是重大的发现。
- 2 X射线被用于检查人体内的骨头断裂。
- 3 他于2002年获得诺贝尔物理学奖。
- 4 如今使用抗生素，许多疾病可以被治愈。
- 5 DNA是生命的构成部分。
- 6 X射线可以通过皮肤和木头。



**B** Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 If May \_\_\_\_\_ (have) time, she \_\_\_\_\_ (go) shopping at the weekend.
- 2 If Ryan \_\_\_\_\_ (try) hard, he \_\_\_\_\_ (win) the competition.
- 3 We \_\_\_\_\_ (catch) the bus if we \_\_\_\_\_ (run) to the bus stop.
- 4 If Angela and Brian \_\_\_\_\_ (work) together, their project \_\_\_\_\_ (be) much better.
- 5 You \_\_\_\_\_ (be) successful and happy if you \_\_\_\_\_ (have) a positive attitude.
- 6 If you \_\_\_\_\_ (read) more books in English, you \_\_\_\_\_ (improve) your English language skills.



**D** Complete the newsletter.  
Write a–g.

- |                |                   |
|----------------|-------------------|
| a a great deal | b blocks          |
| c centuries    | d characteristics |
| e DNA          | f scientist       |
| g structure    |                   |

### Book Club

This month at the Book Club we'll be discussing evolution – or in other words, how the 1 \_\_\_ of living beings change over 2 \_\_\_. To help us, we'll be looking at *The Selfish Gene* by the British 3 \_\_\_ Richard Dawkins. First published in 1976, *The Selfish Gene* created 4 \_\_\_ of debate, and it continues to influence biologists (生物学家) today.

In *The Selfish Gene*, Dawkins states that genes are the building 5 \_\_\_ for the development of life. He also argues that the aim of a gene is to increase its importance in the overall 6 \_\_\_ of a living being, and that this is what leads to changes in 7 \_\_\_ over the years.

Join us for an interesting discussion!



### Reading

Read the texts and answer the questions.

1

**Electricity** is the science connected to electric charges (电荷). It was first studied seriously in 1600 by the English scientist William Gilbert, who gave it the name *electricus*. Nowadays electricity is powering the modern world.

Who first studied electricity seriously?

2

### Science Laboratory

Schedule, Friday 31st May

9:30 am	Class 3B
10:15 am	Class 1C
11:30 am	Class 2A
12:15 pm	Class 3C
2:30 pm	Class 1A
3:15 pm	Class 2B

Who will be in the Science laboratory at 3 pm on 31st May?

### Listening

What will happen? Listen and match the half-sentences. Write a–e.

- |                               |     |                                   |
|-------------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------|
| 1 If Paul does his homework,  | ___ | a she'll get better.              |
| 2 If Amy takes the medicine,  | ___ | b she'll feel healthier.          |
| 3 If John studies about DNA,  | ___ | c he'll get better marks.         |
| 4 If Rita does more exercise, | ___ | d he can relax at the weekend.    |
| 5 If Lee focuses in class,    | ___ | e he'll be able to pass the test. |

# Unit 8 Discoveries

## Lesson 23

### Vocabulary & Language Focus

**A** Complete the sentences. Use these words:

above all    without    gentleman  
honour    laboratories    present

- 1 Scientists have to spend a lot of time in \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 Oscars will be \_\_\_\_\_ next Sunday.
- 3 It's always an \_\_\_\_\_ to receive an award.
- 4 Mr Liu is a real \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 It's impossible to live \_\_\_\_\_ water.
- 6 But \_\_\_\_\_, he always treats people with respect.

**C** Translate the sentences into English.

- 1 主席将会颁奖。
- 2 发明家都是非常有创意的人。
- 3 我们的实验室拥有最现代化的设备。
- 4 电灯泡是由托马斯·爱迪生发明的。
- 5 许多重要的发现改变了我们的生活。
- 6 让我们把掌声送给演讲者。



**B** Match the sentence-halves. Write *a-f*.

- |                                  |       |   |
|----------------------------------|-------|---|
| 1 Chairman, ladies and           | _____ | a to share my thanks to all the committee members with you.                 |
| 2 It's an honour to              | _____ | b all, I'm grateful for the support they have given me throughout the year. |
| 3 I want to take this time       | _____ | c be here tonight as we celebrate our achievements this year.               |
| 4 I have great respect           | _____ | d gentlemen, welcome to this year's Science Club Award ceremony.            |
| 5 And above                      | _____ | e applause for our special guest tonight, Dr Wu Minglai.                    |
| 6 Now let's give a warm round of | _____ | f for their tireless work.  |



 Reading

Read the speech. Then answer the questions below.

Parents and former students, welcome to this year's Science Day. It's an honour to be here today as we show you all the scientific experiments that have been done at our school over the past year, from growing potato plants to making robots.

I want to share some of our students' achievements with you. Firstly, Class 3A reached the final of the local Inter-school Science Competition. And then Ken Jackson, from the same class, came third in the National Young Scientist of the Year award. Well done to Ken and the rest of Class 3A!

I have great respect for the achievements of not only Ken and Class 3A but also all the young scientists at our school. Their hard work, curiosity and creativity are an example to us all. And above all, they promise us that a bright future lies ahead for each and every one of them, whether or not they decide to become scientists in the future.

For those who do decide to become scientists, there can be few better role models than Dr Alex Brown. Dr Brown graduated from our school twenty-five years ago, and for the past ten years he has been working on a space programme. I'm sure you can all imagine, Dr Brown is a very busy man, but he has generously agreed to give us some of his valuable time today. So let's give a warm round of applause to Dr Brown.

1 What is the purpose of the speech?

---

2 What is the purpose of Science Day?

---

3 What did Ken Jackson achieve this year?

---

4 What three things does the speaker respect in all the young scientists at the school?

---

5 Why is Dr Brown a role model for the students who want to become scientists?

---

### Vocabulary & Language Focus

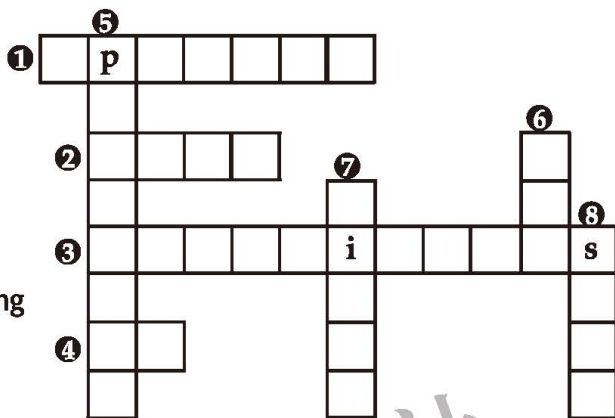
#### A Do the puzzle.

##### Across ➡

- 1 New growths on a plant
- 2 Extremely small
- 3 Tests to find out what happens
- 4 The short form for "centimetre"

##### Down ⬇

- 5 The ability to wait without getting angry
- 6 A container for a plant
- 7 Time when something new starts to exist
- 8 The top layer of the earth



#### B Complete the sentences. Use these words:

failed plant    leaves    patient  
 plant    progress    takes



- 1 It's fun to grow a potato \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 It takes several days before there are any \_\_\_\_\_ on a potato plant.
- 3 Scientists need to be very \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 In some experiments \_\_\_\_\_ may be very slow.
- 5 It \_\_\_\_\_ lots of effort to succeed.
- 6 Doctors \_\_\_\_\_ to save the boy's life.

#### C Translate the sentences into English.

- 1 我最喜欢的科目是化学。
- 2 我发现物理学相当难。
- 3 我希望幼芽可以生长得更快。
- 4 我们需要更耐心一些。
- 5 我想知道你什么时候回来。
- 6 他观察到了马铃薯的生长。
- 7 叶片继续生长，变得更大。
- 8 如果土壤干燥，植物将无法生长。





 **Listening**

Listen to the description and circle the correct answer *a* or *b*.

1 a



b



-----

2 a



b



-----

3 a



b



-----

 **Reading**

Read the experiment report and answer the questions.

1

**Experiment Report on Growing a Frog**  
**Things prepared:**

- a plastic container with a lid
- river sand
- distilled water (蒸馏水)
- underwater plants
- frog eggs
- lettuce

What was the purpose of the experiment?

2

**Observation:**

**Day One**

Nothing has happened. The frog eggs look exactly the same.

**Day Eight**

Some of the eggs are hatching (孵出). It's so exciting!

**Day Fifteen**

All the eggs are hatched, and there are now lots of tiny tadpoles (蝌蚪) in the container.

How many weeks did it take for all the frog eggs to hatch?

3

**What I have learned:**

It takes a long time for frog eggs to develop into adult frogs — about 100 days. However, it is very interesting to observe the process. The experience has made me see just how amazing the natural world is.

What has the writer learned about the natural world?

-----

# Unit 9 Save the Planet Lesson 25

## Vocabulary & Language Focus

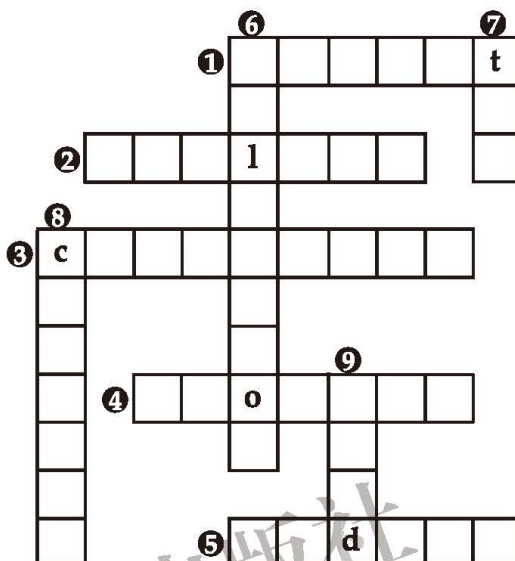
### A Do the puzzle.

#### Across ➡

- 1 Very large object that moves around the sun
- 2 Get and keep things
- 3 Local society
- 4 Make
- 5 Make smaller

#### Down ⬇

- 6 State of being dangerously dirty
- 7 1,016 kilograms
- 8 Brought into existence
- 9 Second-hand



### B Complete the sentences. Use these words:

causes cut down take turns  
environment organise save

- 1 Most cars are bad for the \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2 The best way to be green is to \_\_\_\_\_ energy.
- 3 We should all try to \_\_\_\_\_ the amount of electricity we use.
- 4 Using a lot of electricity \_\_\_\_\_ air pollution.
- 5 We \_\_\_\_\_ to do the housework.
- 6 They asked me to \_\_\_\_\_ a trip to Guangxi.

### C Translate the sentences into English.

- 1 我们应该改变生活方式来拯救地球。
- 2 人们组织合伙用车，并与他们的同事轮流开车上班。
- 3 洗衣机和洗碗机用很多电力。
- 4 少开车有助于减少空气污染。
- 5 废弃物太多是城市的常见问题。
- 6 我们可以做什么来保护我们的环境呢？
- 7 城里的一些人已经开始自己种植蔬菜。



# Lesson 25 Unit 9 Save the Planet

**D** Complete the text. Use these words:

bins environment used waste  
protect recycle throw treated

How much rubbish do you  
1 \_\_\_\_\_ away  
every week? How much  
of it could be 2 \_\_\_\_\_  
and used again?  
Green Action has set up  
a recycling centre in the middle  
of the town. Help us to  
3 \_\_\_\_\_ the  
4 \_\_\_\_\_ by putting all your  
5 \_\_\_\_\_ glass and paper  
things in the 6 \_\_\_\_\_ provided.



Reduce 7 \_\_\_\_\_,  
8 \_\_\_\_\_ more!

## ▶ Reading

Read the texts and answer the questions.

1

### TV Highlights

#### *It's Not Easy Being Green*

(BBC Lifestyle, 7:30 pm)

Dick and James Strawbridge continue to try to make the UK a greener place. In this programme, they help a primary school to cut their water bills, put up a wind turbine (风力涡轮机), and show how to run his car on cooking oil.

How many different projects are shown in the TV programme?

2

### Beach Clean-ups on 3rd June

#### Data Summary

Team	Beach	KG	KM
Sweepers	Big Wave	60	0.9
Green Day	Deep Water	101	1
Eco-Girls	Sandy Bay	20	0.5
Bin Boys	Clear Water	31	0.5

Which team collected the most rubbish?

3

### This week's Green Club meeting

Contrary to what was said last week, this week's Green Club meeting will be in Room 101 on Thursday at the later time of 4:45 pm. Next week we'll be back in Room 203 on Thursday at our usual time of 4:15 pm.

Where are the Green Club meetings usually held?

## ▶ Listening

What do the people say in the interviews? Listen and match the problems with the solutions. Write *a-e*.

- |                    |       |                              |
|--------------------|-------|------------------------------|
| 1 Air pollution    | _____ | a Reuse things               |
| 2 Global warming   | _____ | b Organise car pools         |
| 3 Too much rubbish | _____ | c Recycle more               |
| 4 Too much waste   | _____ | d Use low energy light bulbs |
| 5 Wasted energy    | _____ | e Use less electricity       |

# Unit 9 Save the Planet Lesson 26

## Vocabulary & Language Focus

**A** Complete the sentences. Use these words:

go away as usual other than  
painful recently got hold of

- 1 The food is a little expensive, but \_\_\_\_\_ that it's a great restaurant.
- 2 The child \_\_\_\_\_ his mother's hand.
- 3 Too many people seem to hope that pollution will just \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4 There has been a lot of progress in green technology \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5 She ordered a sandwich and a cup of coffee \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6 Cuts on your feet can be very \_\_\_\_\_.

**C** Translate the sentences into English.

- 1 我可以问你一些问题吗?
- 2 他抓住了狗, 并把它从水里拉出来。
- 3 当时, 他们像往常一样在河边钓鱼。
- 4 显然, 那只狗很饿。
- 5 他手臂上有一些斑点, 但除此之外他还好。
- 6 地方报纸报道了这件事。
- 7 昨晚我们带狗去看兽医。



**B** Match the questions with the answers. Write *a-f*.

- |                                   |     |  |
|-----------------------------------|-----|--|
| 1 What's your name?               | ___ | a My mother and father.                  |
| 2 Where do you live?              | ___ | b We took the train.                     |
| 3 When did you arrive in Beijing? | ___ | c In Shanghai.                           |
| 4 How did you get here?           | ___ | d Sally Kong.                            |
| 5 Who are you travelling with?    | ___ | e Last Friday.                           |
| 6 Why did you come to Beijing?    | ___ | f We wanted to see the Forbidden Palace. |



# Lesson 26 Unit 9 Save the Planet

## Reading

Read the interview. Then answer the questions below.

- Interviewer:** Good afternoon, Professor Smith. Can I ask you some questions about your recent study of pollution in the Diamond River?
- Professor Smith:** Of course. What would you like to know?
- Interviewer:** To start with, can you tell me how many factories you focused on in the study?
- Professor Smith:** We investigated a total of sixty factories. That is only a tiny part of the tens of thousands of factories on the Diamond River, but it's enough for us to get a very good idea of how serious the problem is.
- Interviewer:** You sent a copy of the study to the local government, didn't you?
- Professor Smith:** That's right. They've told me they'll keep it on file.
- Interviewer:** What do you mean?
- Professor Smith:** I mean that the local government will keep a copy of the study so that they can refer to it when necessary.
- Interviewer:** So what will happen now?
- Professor Smith:** Well, the local government has admitted that there are serious environmental problems in the Diamond River area, and they've promised to deal with them.
- Interviewer:** How do you feel overall then?
- Professor Smith:** Actually I'm quite hopeful. As I said, the local government has admitted that there's a problem and they've promised to take action. So that's a good start.
- Interviewer:** Thank you for your time, Professor Smith.

- 1 What does the interviewer want to ask Professor Smith about?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 2 How many factories did Professor Smith's study focus on?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 3 How many factories are there on the Diamond River?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 4 What will the local government do with their copy of Professor Smith's study?  
\_\_\_\_\_
- 5 Why is Professor Smith hopeful?  
\_\_\_\_\_

# Unit 9 Save the Planet Lesson 27

## Vocabulary & Language Focus

**A** Match the words with the definitions. Write *a-h*.

- |                   |     |   |
|-------------------|-----|---|
| 1 at the age of   | ___ | a an area of ground                                       |
| 2 find out        | ___ | b discover  |
| 3 land            | ___ | c not anymore   |
| 4 hero            | ___ | d something that one tries to achieve                     |
| 5 no longer       | ___ | e the air, water and land on Earth                        |
| 6 purpose         | ___ | f when he / she was ... years old                         |
| 7 the environment | ___ | g with a value of   |
| 8 worth           | ___ | h someone who is admired for doing something really brave |

**B** Complete the sentences. Use these words:

borrowed climate deserts  
no longer worth purpose

- 1 The \_\_\_\_\_ is getting warmer.
- 2 As a result, \_\_\_\_\_ are getting bigger.
- 3 How much is this plane \_\_\_\_\_?
- 4 The \_\_\_\_\_ of this exercise is to relax your eyes.
- 5 She \_\_\_\_\_ goes to school by bike.
- 6 Benny \_\_\_\_\_ some money from his mother.

**C** Translate the sentences into English.

- 1 中国在植树方面已经取得了许多成就。
- 2 如今世界上有大面积的土地是沙漠。
- 3 一些科学家对于气候变化有不同的意见。
- 4 植树只是改善环境的其中一种方法。
- 5 森林可能有助于阻止全球变暖。
- 6 种植树木对环境有益。





# Lesson 27 Unit 9 Save the Planet

## D Complete the blog. Write a-h.

- |                 |              |
|-----------------|--------------|
| a environment   | b forest     |
| c province      | d heroes     |
| e international | f meetings   |
| g planted       | h programmes |

Lily's BLOG    

Today I did something for the 1 \_\_\_ – I 2 \_\_\_ some trees. I did this with a group called The Tree Huggers, who are hoping to create a small 3 \_\_\_ outside the city for future generations to enjoy.

The Tree Huggers have already organised a number of 4 \_\_\_ throughout the 5 \_\_\_. They have also been invited to speak at a number of 6 \_\_\_ conferences and 7 \_\_\_. In my opinion they're truly 8 \_\_\_!

## ▶ Reading

Put the sentences into the correct place in the article. Write a-e.

- a The children also learn how to organise tree planting activities or “parties”.
- b At the age of nine, most children want to do their homework as quickly as possible so that they can go out and play.
- c It has already planted over 12 billion trees in 100 countries.
- d A year later, 150,000 trees had been planted throughout Germany.
- e There's lots of information about the organisation, plus downloads, songs and videos.

### Kids are doing it for themselves

1 \_\_\_ Not Felix Finkbeiner. When the nine-year-old German was given an assignment about climate change in 2007, he became so interested that he came up with an idea: the children of the world should plant 1 million trees in every country on Earth.

And so Plant-for-the-Planet was born. On 28th March the first tree was planted in Felix's school. 2 \_\_\_

Nowadays Plant-for-the-Planet is a worldwide movement promoting climate change and global justice (公正). 3 \_\_\_ It also offers educational training days called Academies, where children who have already been trained teach new groups of children how to become “Ambassadors (大使) for Climate Justice”. 4 \_\_\_

For more information about Plant-for-the-Planet check out their website at [www.plant-for-the-planet.org/en](http://www.plant-for-the-planet.org/en). 5 \_\_\_

## ▶ Listening

Listen to the dialogue and order the statements. Write 1-5.

- a Tree planting reduces global warming. \_\_\_\_\_
- b Tree planting helps to stop landslides (滑坡). \_\_\_\_\_
- c Tree planting reduces the amount of CO<sub>2</sub> in the air. \_\_\_\_\_
- d Tree planting stops deserts from expanding. \_\_\_\_\_
- e Tree planting is a good thing for animals. \_\_\_\_\_

# Grammar Summary

## 1 Passive Voice 被动语态

### Uses 用法

英语动词有两种语态，即主动语态（Active Voice）和被动语态（Passive Voice）。被动语态中，句子的主语是动作的承受者，主语与谓语是被动关系。当动作的执行者不明、无需提及动作的执行者，或者强调动作本身时，使用被动语态。试比较下面的句子：

Jimmy broke my kitchen window this morning. (主动语态，强调动作的执行者，即Jimmy。)

That window was broken this morning. (被动语态，强调窗子被打破的事实。)

The bridge is being repaired now. (被动语态，强调修桥这件事，没有必要提及动作执行者。)

Those pyramids were built around 400 AD. (被动语态，动作执行者不明。)

### Form 形式

- 被动语态由“be + 及物动词的过去分词”构成。be有人称、数和时态的变化。
- 不同时态的被动语态构成如下：
  - 一般现在时：am / is / are + 过去分词
  - 一般将来时：shall / will + be + 过去分词
  - 一般过去时：was / were + 过去分词
  - 现在进行时：am / is / are + being + 过去分词
  - 过去进行时：was / were + being + 过去分词
  - 现在完成时：have / has + been + 过去分词

例如：

The room is filled with smoke.

Everything will be done to put out the big fire.

The bridge wasn't built until 1914.

The room is being cleaned at the moment.  
He told me that the road was being repaired.

All of the food has been eaten up.

- 在被动语态中，需要提及动作的执行者时，执行者前加介词by。例如：

Mickey Mouse was created by Walt Disney.

What was the accident caused by?

## 2 Conjunctions 连词

### 1 表示原因的连词

because, since, as是常见的表示原因的连词，可以引导原因状语从句。例如：

I can be a good teacher because I'm very creative.

Since you don't know the answer, perhaps we should ask someone else.

As it was too dark to go on, we stopped there.

### 2 since

since意为“因为，既然”，还可以作时间连词，引导时间状语从句，意为“自……以后，从……以来”，一般与完成时态连用。例如：

He has been ill since he arrived here.

I haven't played baseball since I left university.

### 3 as well as

as well as可以作表示比较的连词短语，引导比较状语从句，意为“和……一样好”。as well as也可以作介词短语，连接两个并列的成分，“除……之外，也，还”。例如：

She sings as well as she dances. (比较状语从句)

You look as well as you did five years



ago. (比较状语从句)

She's clever **as well as** beautiful. (连接两个并列成分 *clever* 和 *beautiful*)

Michael **as well as** Judie is friendly to me. (连接两个并列成分 *Michael* 和 *Judie*)

### 3 So that / so ... that

#### 1 so that

*so that* 引导目的状语从句, 意为“为了, 以便”。例如:

I have to start off early every day **so that** I can catch the train.

I brought him a little food **so that** he wouldn't get hungry.

#### 2 so ... that

*so ... that* 引导结果状语从句, 意为“如此……以致”。常用的结构是: *so*+形容词/副词+*that*。例如:

He swims **so quickly that** none of us can keep up with him.

Everything happened **so quickly that** I had no time to think.

### 4 Relative Clause 定语从句

- 定语从句用来修饰、限定正在谈论的人或事物。例如:

That was the man **who refused to give us any help.**

I couldn't bear the noise **that he made.**

- 被定语从句修饰和限定的人或事物称为先行词, 如上面句子中的 *the man* 和 *the noise*。定语从句对先行词起修饰和限制的作用。引导定语从句的词称为关系词(包括关系代词和关系副词)。常见的关系代词有 *which*, *that* 和 *who* 等。

- *who* 和 *that* 用来指代人。例如:

I don't like people **who / that** get angry easily.

Do you know the man **who / that** came here yesterday?

- *which* 和 *that* 用来指代事物。例如:

The book **that / which** he borrowed from the library was very interesting.

It's the film **which / that** I saw last night.

- 作宾语的关系代词可以省略。例如:

It's the film (**which / that**) I saw last night.

He is the man (**whom / that**) people would like at the first sight.

### 5 Infinitive 不定式

不定式(动词不定式)的基本形式是“*to* + 动词原形”, 有时可以不带 *to*。不定式没有人称和数的变化。例如:

I hope **to see** you again.

He told me not **to be** late again.

He got up early **to catch** the train.

I heard him **sing** today.

- 不定式可以作宾语。常见的可以接不定式作宾语的动词有: *agree*, *aim*, *ask*, *choose*, *continue*, *decide*, *demand*, *expect*, *fail*, *help*, *hope*, *learn*, *manage*, *need*, *offer*, *plan*, *prepare*, *pretend*, *promise*, *prove*, *refuse*, *seem*, *try*, *want*, *wish* 等。例如:

Hope **to see** you again next week.

Did you ask me **to come** here at 10?

- 不定式可以作宾语补足语, 结构为“动词 + 宾语 + *to do*”。这类动词常见的有: *expect*, *tell*, *want*, *wish*, *invite* 等。有些动词后接不带 *to* 的不定式作宾语补足语, 如 *feel*, *hear*, *let*, *make*, *have*, *see*

等。例如：

He expected me **to tell** the truth.

Did you see her **come** into the room?

- 不定式可以作目的状语。例如：  
She would do everything **to save** her son's life.  
She came to China **to learn** Chinese.

## 6 Articles 冠词

冠词是最主要、最典型的限定词，有不定冠词 *a, an* 和定冠词 *the* 两种形式。

### 1 不定冠词 *a* 和 *an*

不定冠词 *a* 和 *an* 用于单数可数名词前。在辅音前用 *a*，在元音前用 *an*。例如：

**a** story    **a** European country  
**an** elephant    **an** hour  
**an** honest man

#### Uses 用法

- 泛指一类人或物。例如：  
A child needs love.
- 泛指第一次提到的人或物。例如：  
There is a policeman at the corner of the street.
- 常与时间或度量名词连用，表示“每一(个)”。例如：  
sixty kilometres **an** hour  
four times **a** day
- 与数词连用。例如：  
**a** million    half **a** dozen  
**a** quarter
- 用于 *few* 和 *little* 前。例如：  
**a** few    **a** little
- 表示“同一”“相同”。例如：  
We are of **an** age.

### 2 定冠词 *the*

定冠词主要用来特指，即指定所修饰的名

词是某(些)人或某(些)物，以示区别于同类中的其他人或物。

#### Uses 用法

- 表示上文提到过的人或物。例如：  
His car struck a tree. You can see the mark on **the** tree.
- 用在带有限制性修饰语的名词前，特指某一特定人或物。例如：  
**the** girl in blue    **the** man in the car  
Is this **the** plane to New York?
- 用于指独一无二的自然现象，或表示方位、左右等名词前。例如：  
**the** earth    **the** sun    **the** North Pole  
in **the** east / west / south / north  
on **the** right / left
- 表示一类人或物。例如：  
**The** horse is a useful animal.
- 用在形容词、副词最高级前。例如：  
**the** shortest way  
**the** most beautiful city  
Many people think that Monday is **the** worst day of the week.
- 指谈话双方都知道的人或物。例如：  
He sent for **the** doctor.  
Please pass me **the** book.
- 用于形容词前，表示一类人或某一抽象概念。例如：  
**the** old    **the** dying
- 用于江河湖海、山脉、岛屿及国家等专有名词前。例如：  
**the** Atlantic    **the** Sahara    **the** USA
- 用于乐器前。例如：  
She learned to play **the** violin.
- 用于 *first, second* 等序数词前。例如：  
He was **the** first to think of the idea.

### 3 零冠词

- 物质或抽象名词前。例如：



**Electricity** is a form of energy.

Men fear **death**.

- 用于三餐前。例如：

After **lunch**, students usually take a nap.

**Dinner** will be served at eight o'clock.

- 用于体育运动前。例如：

play **tennis / cards / volleyball / football ...**

- 不带冠词的常用语有：

at home / school

go to school / church / university /  
work / sleep ...

by car / bus / train / plane / boat /  
bicycle ...

on foot

go home

## 7 Conditional 条件状语从句

- 条件状语从句主要由*if* 或 *unless* 引导。

例如：

If it rains tomorrow, they won't go out.

Nobody will get anything **unless** they ask for it.

- 谈论根据将来的情况可能发生的事时，*if* 条件句常用一般现在时表将来。例如：

If he **comes** back today, I'll tell you.

We can have a talk if you **have** time.

- 向他人提出建议、请求，或者命令某人做某事时，*if* 条件句使用一般现在时，主句常用祈使句。例如：

If you **feel** sleepy, **go to bed**.

If she **comes** to Beijing, **take her to the Summer Palace**.

# Notes to the Texts

## Unit 1

### Lesson 1

**It is very rude to show the bottom of your shoe when you rest one leg on top of the other.** 当你把一条腿放在另一条腿上休息时，露出鞋底是很粗鲁的。

本句中，it是形式主语，真正的主语是to show the bottom of your shoe。当主语是动词不定式、动名词、主语从句时，常将主语放在谓语动词之后，而将it放在句首。例如：

It is impolite to ask a woman how old she is. 问女士的年龄是不礼貌的。

### Lesson 2

**Sometimes I get confused.** 有时候，我会对此感到困惑。

get confused，意为“感到困惑”。

confused是动词confuse的过去分词形式，用作形容词，意为“困惑的，迷茫的”。

### Communication Workshop

**I feel so frustrated.** 我感到很沮丧。

feel / get / be frustrated，意为“懊丧，懊恼，沮丧”。如：

He has got frustrated with the exam. 他对考试感到沮丧。

I'm frustrated with the result. 我对结果感到沮丧。

## Unit 2

### Lesson 4

1. **J. K. Rowling** 乔安妮·凯瑟琳·罗琳 (1965~)，英国女作家，代表作品有《哈利·波特》系列小说。

2. **Mark Twain** 马克·吐温 (1835~1910)，美国幽默大师、小说家、作家，也是

著名演说家，19世纪后期美国现实主义文学的杰出代表。代表作品有《哈克贝利·费恩历险记》《汤姆·索亚历险记》。

3. **Lewis Carroll** 刘易斯·卡罗尔 (1832~1898)，英国数学家、作家。代表作品有《爱丽丝漫游仙境》。

4. **William Golding** 威廉·戈尔丁 (1911~1993)，英国小说家、诗人，1983年诺贝尔文学奖得主。代表作品有《蝇王》。

5. **The Adventures of Tom Sawyer** 《汤姆·索亚历险记》

美国小说，作者为马克·吐温。其姊妹篇是《哈克贝利·费恩历险记》。

6. **Alice's Adventures in Wonderland** 《爱丽丝漫游仙境》，著名童话故事，作者为刘易斯·卡罗尔。

7. **Lord of the Flies** 《蝇王》，著名哲理小说，作者为威廉·戈尔丁。

8. **When he wrote the book, he also added maths puzzles to the story.** 他写这本书时，还在故事中加入了数学难题。

add ... to ...，意为“向……增加，添加”。如：

Shall I add your name to the list? 我可以把你的名字写进名单吗？

I'd like to add some salt to the soup. 我想在汤里加一些盐。

9. **They are forced to stay on an island together after their plane has an accident.** 飞机发生事故后，他们被迫一起待在一个岛上。

force sb to do，意为“强迫，迫使（某人做某事）”。如：

She forced herself to be polite to them. 她



对他们强装客气。

**10. However, the boys don't get along, and have trouble keeping the peace.** 但是，这些男孩们不能和睦相处，无法维持和平。

have (no) trouble doing sth, 意为“做某事（没）有困难，（没）有麻烦”。如：

I've been having trouble checking my email. 我一直无法查看邮件。

We had no trouble finding the place. 我们没费什么劲就找到了那个地方。

### Lesson 5

**1. The man who doesn't read good books has no advantage over the man who can't read them.** 不读好书的人不比那些无法读书的人强到哪里去。

advantage (over sb), 意为“有利条件，有利因素，优势”。如：

Being tall gave him an advantage over the other players. 他个子高，比其他选手有优势。

**2. Well, it depends on what you're looking for.** 嗯，这就要看你找什么了。depend on, 意为“由……决定；取决于；受……影响”。如：

It depends on the weather. 这要视天气情况而定。

We might need more food depending on how many people turn up. 我们可能需要更多的食物，不过要依到场的人数而定。

### Lesson 6

**1. He focused on his painting like an artist.** 他像艺术家一样专注于他的油漆工作。

focus on, 意为“(使)集中于，专注于”。如：

The discussion focused on three main problems. 讨论集中在三个主要问题上。

**2. Aunt Polly's very proud of this fence.** 波利姨妈对这栅栏很自豪。

be proud of, 意为“骄傲的，自豪的，得意的”。如：

He was proud of himself for not giving up. 他为自己没有放弃而感到自豪。

### Communication Workshop

**1. Many people prefer reading paper books because they are easy to buy from bookshops and comfortable to read.** 很多人更喜欢读纸质书籍，因为它们容易在书店买到，而且读起来很舒服。

prefer, 意为“更喜欢，认为……胜过”，后面可接名词、代词，也可接动词-ing形式或动词不定式。如：

She prefers jazz to rock music. 她喜欢爵士乐胜过摇滚乐。

I prefer not to think about it. 我不想考虑此事。

**2. It doesn't matter which you use as long as it allows you to enjoy reading.** 无论你使用哪种形式，只要它能让你享受阅读的乐趣就可以。

as long as, 意为“只要”。如：

We will go as long as the weather is good. 只要天气好我们就去。

## Unit 3

### Lesson 7

**1. Leonardo da Vinci** 莱昂纳多·达·芬奇(1452~1519)，意大利艺术家、科学家，欧洲文艺复兴的杰出代表。他

的绘画代表作品《蒙娜丽莎》《抱银鼠的女子》和《最后的晚餐》体现了精湛的艺术造诣。他通晓多个领域的知识，包括音乐、数学、生理、物理、天文、地质等。

2. **Because he couldn't test them, not all of da Vinci's plans worked out as well as he wished.** 因为达·芬奇无法测试它们，所以并非所有计划都如他希望的那样取得成功。

1) work out, 意为“成功地进展”。

如:

Things have worked out quite well for us. 事情的结果对我们很有利。

2) not all, 意为“并不是所有的都……, 并非都”, 表示部分否定。如:

Not all birds can fly. 不是所有的鸟都会飞。

3. **Some think da Vinci wanted to keep his ideas secret as he wrote his diary in code.** 有些人认为达·芬奇想将他的想法保密，因为他用密码写日记。

keep sth secret, 意为“保守秘密”。

如:

She kept her past secret from us. 她对我们避而不谈她的过去。

I promise I'll keep it secret. 我保证保守这个秘密。

## Lesson 8

1. **I believe we'll benefit more from new inventions in the future.** 我相信，未来我们会从新发明中受益更多。

benefit from, 意为“得益于，得利于”。如:

Who will benefit from these changes? 谁会从这些变革中受益呢?

2. **Technology isn't a bad thing and we**

**do need new inventions, but having more inventions may not be a good thing.** 技术不是坏事，而且我们真的需要一些新发明。但是，拥有更多的发明可能不是一件好事。

do在本句中，表示强调。如:

I do think he is right. 我确实认为他是对的。

Do come often. 一定常来啊。

3. **But nuclear power provides us with cheap energy.** 但是核能为我们提供了廉价的能源。

provide sb with sth 或 provide sth for sb, 意为“提供，供应，给予”。如:

We are here to provide the public with a service. 我们来这里为公众服务。

## Lesson 9

1. **Because of this he couldn't drink it any more, but he could eat it.** 因此，他不能再喝它（饮料）了，但是他能吃它。

not ... any more, 意为“再也不；不再”，常用于否定句和疑问句末。如:

She doesn't live here any more. 她已经不在这里住了。

Why doesn't he speak to me any more? 他为什么不和我说话了?

2. **While some kids just complain when snow gets in their mittens and their hands get wet, 10-year-old Kathryn Gregory decided to do something about it.** 有些孩子只会抱怨手套里进了雪，弄湿了手，而10岁的凯瑟琳·格雷戈瑞却决定为此做一些事。

while此处用于对比两件事物，意为“而；然而”。如:

While Tom's very good at science, his



brother is good at sports. 汤姆很擅长科学, 而他的哥哥擅长运动。

**3. All these inventions have one thing in common – the kids were trying to solve problems in their lives.** 所有这些发明都有一个共同点——孩子们在试着解决他们生活中的问题。

have ... in common, 意为“有……共同点; 相同”。如:

Jane and I have something in common – we like sports very much. 简和我的共同点是我们都喜欢运动。

### Communication Workshop

**As a result, he is known as “The Father of the Chinese Language Laser Typesetting”.** 因此, 他被称为“中文激光照排之父”。

know ... as ..., 意为“认定某人、某事物为……”, 常用于被动语态 be known as。

He's known as the fastest runner in his class. 他被认为是班里跑得最快的人。

## Unit 4

### Lesson 10

**1. Astronauts tie themselves to the wall so that they don't float around when they are sleeping.** 宇航员将他们自己固定在墙上, 以便睡着时不会四处飘移。

tie ... to ..., 意为“把……系、拴、捆在……上”。如:

They tied him to a tree. 他们把他绑在一棵树上。

**2. Since they have to work hard, they need to get plenty of rest.** 由于他们要努力工作, 他们需要充分的休息。

plenty of, 意为“大量, 众多, 充足”。如:

plenty of eggs 充足的鸡蛋

plenty of time 充裕的时间

### Lesson 11

**Dr Wang, thank you for talking with us.** 王博士, 感谢您和我们对话。

thank you for ..., 意为“感谢你……”。如:

Dr Wang, thank you for your time today. 王博士, 感谢您今天抽出时间(给我们介绍情况)。

Thank you for listening. 感谢你们的收听。

### Lesson 12

**1. He sent a message to his own planet and got ready to land.** 他给自己的星球发了一条信息, 然后准备着陆。

get ready to do 和 get ready for sth / doing sth, 意为“准备好”。如:

The students are getting ready for the exams. 学生们正在为考试做准备。

**2. He was scared and hit Oscar on his head.** 他很害怕, 打了奥斯卡的头。

hit sb on the head, 意为“击打某人的头部”。head 可以替换为其他身体部位。如:

She hit him on the shoulder with her umbrella. 她用雨伞打了他的肩膀。

**3. The boy and the dog ran across the field and went home.** 男孩和狗跑过田野, 回了家。

run across, 意为“跑过, 穿过”。如:

Don't run across the road. 不要跑着横穿过马路。

## Communication Workshop

**All of my classmates have decided to work harder and do our best to realise our dreams.** 我的同学们都决定更加努力学习, 尽最大努力实现我们的梦想。

do one's best, 意为“尽某人最大的努力”。如:

Don't worry about the exam – just do your best. 别担心考试——尽你的最大努力吧。

I will do my best to improve my listening. 我会尽力提高我的听力。

## Unit 5

### Lesson 13

1. **Anne of Green Gables** 《绿山墙的安妮》

著名加拿大小说, 1908年首次出版, 作者为露西·莫德·蒙哥马利。

2. **Matthew Cuthbert was on his way to Bright River on his horse and carriage.** 马修·卡斯伯特驾着他的马车在去往明河的路上。

on one's / the way to, 意为“在某人去……的路上”。如:

Dick often reads novels on his way to work on the train. 迪克经常在坐火车上班的途中读小说。

One day, I lost myself on the way to my uncle's home. 有一天我在去叔叔家的路上迷路了。

3. **If you didn't come for me tonight, I made up my mind to go down the road to that cherry tree at the corner, climb up it and stay all night.** 如果今晚你不来接我, 我决定沿着这条路走到拐角的那棵樱桃树那里, 爬到树上, 整夜待在上面。

make up one's mind, 意为“下定决心, 做出决定”。如:

Think well before you make up your mind. 做出决定之前, 请好好想想。

### Lesson 14

**The king's officers argued about many things, even about small things.** 国王的官员们经常争论, 甚至是为了一些小事。

argue (with sb) about / over sth, 意为“为……而争论、争吵、争辩”。如:

Don't argue with me about it again. 不要再跟我争论那件事了。

### Lesson 15

**Failure meant I stopped pretending to myself that I was and began to direct all my energy into finishing the only work that really mattered to me...** 失败意味着我不再自欺欺人。我就是我。然后开始把我所有的精力都投入到对我来说唯一真正重要的工作中去……

other than, 意为“除了”。如:

What are you doing other than work? 除了工作你还干些什么?

I don't know any French people other than you. 除了你, 我不认识的法国人。

## Communication Workshop

**I was so tired that I fell asleep immediately and forgot to set the alarm for the next morning.** 我太累了, 所以立刻就睡着了, 还忘了为第二天早晨上闹钟。

forget to do, 意为“忘了做某事”。如:

Take care and don't forget to write. 多保重, 别忘了写信。



I forgot to ask him for his phone number. 我忘了向他要电话号码了。

## Unit 6

### Lesson 16

#### 1. He was named Rookie of the Month.

他被评为月度最佳新秀。

#### 2. Yao Ming is also known for his charity work.

姚明还因他的慈善工作而闻名。

be known for, 意为“因……而闻名”。如:

Her mother is known for her cooking. 她母亲因其烹饪而闻名。

### Lesson 17

#### 1. Now that I've achieved my goal, I feel I owe it to my father.

现在我已经达到了我的目标。我觉得这一切应该归功于我父亲。

owe ... to, 意为“将……归功于”。如:  
I owe my success to all my friends who helped me. 我把成功归功于所有曾经帮助过我的朋友。

#### 2. She also spends a lot of time doing volunteer work.

她还花很多时间做志愿者的工作。

spend ... (in) doing, 意为“花……时间做某事”。如:

How much time do you spend in cooking?  
你花多少时间做饭?

### Lesson 18

The film company has won many Oscars and produced a number of successful films such as *Toy Story*, *WALL-E* and *Up*. 该电影公司获得了很多奥斯卡奖, 而

且制作了一些成功的电影, 如《玩具总动员》《机器人总动员》和《飞屋环游记》等。

Oscars 奥斯卡奖, 是美国电影艺术与科学学院设立的学院奖 (Academy Awards)。

### Communication Workshop

Mum was always calm, fair, and wise beyond her years. 妈妈总是平静、公平、智慧, 超越了她的年龄。

beyond one's years, 意为“超越了某人的年龄”。

## Unit 7

### Lesson 20

If I compare myself to others, it really doesn't help. 拿自己和别人比较, 是没有意义的。

compare ... to / with ..., 意为“比较……和……”。如:

He compared London to Paris. 他把伦敦和巴黎作比较。

此外, compare ... to ... 还可以表示“把……比作……”。如:

Shakespeare compared the world to a stage. 莎士比亚把世界比作一个舞台。

### Lesson 21

1. This must be one of the most difficult days I've ever had. 这一定是我经历的最艰难的日子之一。

“must be + 表语”, 表示推测, 用于肯定句。如:

You must be hungry after all that walking. 走了这么远的路, 你一定饿了吧。

2. However, I can't complain because it's nothing compared to the journey

of **Roald Amundsen**. 但是, 我不能抱怨, 因为和罗阿尔德·阿蒙德森的行程相比, 这不算什么。

Roald Amundsen, 罗阿尔德·阿蒙德森, 挪威极地探险家。他是第一个到达南极的人, 抵达时间为1911年12月14日。

### Communication Workshop

1. **shikumen-style houses** 石库门式的房屋  
石库门是最具上海特色的居民住宅。这种建筑大量吸收了江南民居的样式, 以石头做门框, 以乌漆实心厚木做门扇, 这种建筑因此得名“石库门”。

2. **I liked both the new and the old Shanghai. Two days was a bit short.**  
新、老上海我都喜欢。两天时间有点短。

1) both ... and ..., 意为“……和……都”。如:

It is both good and cheap. 它又好又便宜。

2) a bit, 意为“有点”。如:

She looked a bit nervous. 她看起来有点紧张。

You have not changed a bit! 你一点儿也没变!

## Unit 8

### Lesson 22

1. **the Nobel Prize** 诺贝尔奖

以瑞典著名化学家阿尔弗雷德·贝恩哈德·诺贝尔的部分遗产作为基金创立的奖项。分设物理、化学、生理或医学、文学、和平五个奖项。

2. **If we learn more about DNA, we will be able to treat more diseases.**  
如果对DNA能了解更多, 我们将能够

治疗更多的疾病。

be able to do, 意为“能够”。如:

You must be able to speak English for this job. 做这项工作你得会说英语。

### Lesson 23

1. **Believe and act as if it were impossible to fail.** (他们)相信并进行(实验), 就像决不会失败。

这是美国发明家查尔斯·凯特灵说过的话。

as if, 意为“犹如, 好像”。

2. **All of you have done great work and we had a very difficult time making a final choice this year.** 你们所有人的工作都很出色, 使我们很难做出最后的选择。

have a difficult / hard time (in) doing, 意为“做某事有困难”。如:

I'm having a hard time finding a job. 我找工作到处碰壁。

## Unit 9

### Lesson 25

1. **We hear a lot about how we should change our lives to help save our planet.** 我们听到很多关于我们要如何改变生活来保护我们的星球的事。

hear about, 意为“听说, 得知”。如:

Where did you hear about our university? 你是从哪里听说我们大学的?

I'm sorry to hear about your accident. 获悉你遇到的意外, 我很难过。

2. **My dad organises a car pool with our neighbours and they take turns driving to work.** 我爸爸和邻居一起拼车, 他们轮流开车上班。



take turns doing, 意为“轮流做”。如:  
Susan and her brother take turns washing  
the dishes. 苏珊和她弟弟轮流洗盘子。

## Lesson 27

**A lot of work is still needed to prevent deserts from getting larger and to stop the climate from getting warmer.** (我们)还需要做大量工作, 阻止沙漠扩大和气候变暖。

prevent ... from doing ..., 意为“阻止……做……”。如:

The bad weather prevented them from having a picnic. 坏天气让他们不能去野餐了。

## Communication Workshop

**In order to save energy, we turn off the lights during the day or when they are not being used.** 为了节约能源, 我们在白天或者用不着灯时, 都把灯关上。

in order to, 意为“为了, 目的是, 以便于”。如:

In order to pass the 800-metre running test, he kept practising for a month. 为了能通过八百米跑的考试, 他持续训练了一个月。

# Tapescripts

## Unit 1

### Lesson 2 Exercise 3

*Xiaoxia is studying in the United States this summer. She is talking with her teacher about the differences between British English and American English.*

**Xiaoxia:** Sometimes I get confused. I thought there was one standard for English spelling but there are actually different ways to spell words. Some spellings I see are different from what I learned in China. Look here. The word “color” is spelt without the “u” and “grey” is spelt “g-r-a-y” instead of “g-r-e-y”.

**Teacher:** It’s hard, isn’t it? Well, even for native speakers, it can be confusing if you travel. For example, the first floor in Britain is the second floor here. Our first floor is their ground floor.

**Xiaoxia:** And I notice when you’re in a restaurant, you need to ask for the “check”, not the “bill”. But you pay with “bills”, don’t you?

**Teacher:** Yes. I wonder what they pay with in Britain. Let’s check online. Ah, here, they call them “notes”. You didn’t realise there were so many differences, did you?

**Xiaoxia:** No, I never thought about these things before. But you understand each other, don’t you? For example, when you say “tomato” (*American English pronunciation*), a British person knows you mean “tomato” (*British English pronunciation*),

right?

**Teacher:** Most of the time, yes.

Sometimes words sound very different but don’t worry. The more you listen, the more you’ll get used to it.

## Unit 2

### Lesson 5 Exercise 3

**Host:** Hello everyone. I’m your host David Newton and welcome to “The Book Club”. Today we’re going to discuss how important reading is. Our guests today are well-known writer Sandra White and English teacher Dr Peter Johnson. Welcome to the show.

**Sandra:** Thank you. It’s great to be here.

**Peter:** Thanks.

**Host:** I remember the famous American writer Mark Twain once said, “The man who doesn’t read good books has no advantage over the man who can’t read them.” What do you think, Peter?

**Peter:** That’s true. Twain was a very wise man. I think we forget that there was a time when fewer people knew how to read and write. Now reading is something everyone does. There’s a world of wonderful books out there – old books, new books, e-books – it doesn’t matter. They can all help people learn.

**Sandra:** Well, not all books help people learn. Good books do.

**Host:** So, Sandra. How do we know if we’re reading a good book or not?



What is a good book?

**Sandra:** Well, it depends on what you're looking for, but one thing is clear: good books are inspiring. A lot of famous people who achieved great things were inspired by a certain book during a key period in their life – usually when they were young.

**Peter:** Right. I remember the famous British science fiction writer Arthur C. Clarke once said, "I'm rather proud of the fact that I know several astronauts who became astronauts through reading my books."

**Host:** That's very interesting! And ...

### Unit 3

#### Lesson 8 Exercise 2

**Teacher:** OK, everyone. Today Andrew and Jenny are going to have a short debate about inventions. Andrew, let's start with you.

**Andrew:** Thank you, Mr Collins. I support the position that scientists need to quickly increase the number of new inventions. Inventions help us live better and longer. Think about all the inventions that save lives like X-rays and machines to start hearts when they stop. I believe we'll benefit more from new inventions in the future.

**Teacher:** Jenny, your response?

**Jenny:** I don't agree. In my opinion, scientists should cut down on the number of new inventions.

Technology isn't a bad thing and we do need new inventions, but having more inventions may not be a good thing. Some inventions bring serious problems, for example, nuclear power.

**Andrew:** But nuclear power provides us with cheap energy.

**Jenny:** Cheap but not safe! Lots of people are thinking about its safety. There have been dangerous accidents in Japan recently.

**Andrew:** I disagree. What about cars? There's some danger involved too. Should we not use them just because car accidents happen every day? Cars make our life easier, don't you agree?

**Jenny:** I don't think so. Just look at traffic jams. We waste so much time on the road because there are too many cars. Moreover, all those cars make the air very polluted.

**Andrew:** And this is why we need more new inventions – to deal with problems like air pollution. I know some new cars are good for our environment. I believe they will help to solve some of the pollution problems.

**Teacher:** All right class. Let's discuss this together. Who do you agree with?

### Unit 4

#### Lesson 11 Exercise 2

**Host:** Hello listeners. Welcome to Science This Week. We all know

China's space programme has achieved a lot. To help us learn more, a scientist from China's space programme is joining us from her Beijing office. Dr Wang, thank you for talking with us.

**Dr Wang:** My pleasure.

**Host:** Can you briefly talk about the history of China's space programme?

**Dr Wang:** Sure. China's space programme began in 1956. We launched our first satellite, Dongfanghong 1, in 1970. Space flight started with the launch of Shenzhou 1.

**Host:** Can you tell us something about the Shenzhou spacecraft?

**Dr Wang:** Shenzhou 1 was China's first unmanned flight. It was launched in 1999. Three more launches followed. The manned launches of Shenzhou 5, 6, and 7 happened in 2003, 2005 and 2008. And in 2012, the first female Chinese astronaut went into space on Shenzhou 9.

**Host:** So, China's first astronaut was sent into space on Shenzhou 5?

**Dr Wang:** Yes, that was in 2003. It carried the first Chinese astronaut, Yang Liwei into space.

**Host:** I've heard another famous name, Tiangong 1. Can you tell us something about it?

**Dr Wang:** It was another great achievement in 2011 that showed China's ability to build space stations.

**Host:** Wow! China's space technology has advanced quickly in less than

sixty years.

**Dr Wang:** Yes. Even though China's space programme started nearly fifty years later than the America's, Chinese scientists have put a lot of effort into the programme and have never given up. Without the hard work of all the great scientists in the programme, we would never have succeeded.

**Host:** Dr Wang, thank you for your time today.

**Dr Wang:** You're welcome.

## Unit 5

### Lesson 14 Exercise 3

**The King:** Now, gentleman. I've put the same thing in front of you all. Please reach out your hands, touch the object, then step back and tell me what I've put before you. Officer 1?

**Officer 1:** Sir, it's long and thin. I can hold it in my hand. It's obviously a rope.

**The King:** Interesting ... Officer 2?

**Officer 2:** Don't listen to him, sir. It's not a rope. It's long but it's thick and heavy with holes in the end. It's a hose, sir.

**The King:** What do you think, Officer 3?

**Officer 3:** They're both wrong, sir. It's thick and heavy. I can put my arms around it but I can't move it or lift it. It's quite clearly a tree.

**The King:** Officer 4, what about you?

**Officer 4:** Those men can't be trusted, sir. It's not the way they say at all.



It's flat and round. It's a floor mat.

**The King:** Do you agree, Officer 5?

**Officer 5:** No, sir. It's not flat at all. It's a piece of iron. It's long, round and solid.

**Narrator:** The king asked the guard to light the candles and take the cloth off everyone's eyes. Now everyone could see clearly. Before them was an elephant.

**The King:** As you can see, you were all wrong. Officer 1, you could only feel the tail. Officer 2, you were near the elephant's trunk. Officer 3, you were putting your arms around the elephant's leg. Officer 4, you were touching its ear and Officer 5, you were holding the elephant's tusk. Not one of you listened to the others and not one of you knew that it was an elephant. If you had listened to each other and worked together, instead of trying to be right, you could know what it was. I hope you've learned your lesson.

## Unit 6

### Lesson 17 Exercise 2

**Bella:** Hello everyone. I'm Bella. I'm going to talk about my dad. He is the person I treasure most. I would prefer to use the word "friend" to describe him.

My dad allows me to do anything I like, well, as long as it's not against his rules. We have the same interests and we often share books with each other. But most

importantly, he always gives me the support I need when I'm having difficulties.

I remember my last year of junior high. I had just failed an important test and I was very worried. Then, on a peaceful night, my dad came to my room and said, "Do you know why snow is white? The answer is: It has forgotten its original color." Then I realised that I shouldn't let this failure bother me. Now that I've achieved my goal, I feel I owe it to my father. I just want to say, "Thank you, Dad."

**Adam:** Hi. My name is Adam. My role model is my neighbour Ms Li. She is in her eighties now but she is still young at heart. Unlike many other people her age, Ms Li is very active and enjoys outdoor activities. I often see her riding her bike in the park and she goes hiking every week. She says it makes her feel young.

Many people think that the life of retired people must be slow and boring, but Ms Li's life isn't. She has taught piano lessons to children since she retired. She also spends a lot of time doing volunteer work. I've learned a lot from Ms Li. She has helped me understand that people won't be old if they still have a great love for life.

**Lily:** Hello. I'm Lily. Many people think of famous people as their role models but for me, my role model is my cousin, Jack. He does everything according to a plan.

For example, he makes a plan for the whole week and he sticks to the plan. What's more, nobody can change his plan! Some people might find that strange, but I think it's amazing. He's a very honest person. I've never heard him tell a lie.

At school, he's an excellent student and he never looks down on anyone. In our family, he's the oldest cousin so he always sets a good example for us. I want to follow his example.

to fail," these hardworking researchers tried experiment after experiment until they made a discovery that will change all of our lives for the better.

While we honour you this evening, we mustn't forget everyone who has worked so hard this year. All of you have done great work and we had a very difficult time making a final choice this year. So, in closing, I wish you a wonderful evening as we celebrate these great achievements. Now, let's give a warm round of applause to our chairman who will present the award.

## Unit 8

### Lesson 23 Exercise 3

Chairman Wilson, ladies and gentlemen, Welcome to the Roseland Centre. It's an honour to be here tonight as we present the award for Discovery of the Year.

The winners this year have done a great job to help us understand human health. Their discovery will certainly improve our quality of life in the years to come. This discovery wasn't made easily. I want to take this time to share some of their difficulties with you. They spent long hours in laboratories, libraries, offices and at home. Some had the support of their husbands and wives, others did not. I have great respect for their hard work. Without the most modern equipment, they did their best with what they had.

And above all, they never gave up. Just like Charles Kettering, who said, "Believe and act as if it were impossible

## Unit 9

### Lesson 26 Exercise 2

*There's been an incident at a polluted local river. Ellie Watson is interviewing someone who was there.*

**Ellie:** Hello. Is your name Jeremy?

**Jeremy:** Yes.

**Ellie:** Hello. I'm Ellie Watson. Can I ask you some questions about what happened?

**Jeremy:** Sure, no problem.

**Ellie:** To start with, can you tell us when you were at the river?

**Jeremy:** It was yesterday, at around three in the afternoon.

**Ellie:** You were fishing, weren't you?

**Jeremy:** That's right. I was with my friends. We didn't catch anything though. As usual!

**Ellie:** What do you mean?

**Jeremy:** Well, there have been a lot of dead fish there recently.

**Ellie:** That doesn't sound very good.



**Jeremy:** No, it isn't. My dad tells me not to go fishing. He says we can't eat any fish from that water.

**Ellie:** Hmm, that's terrible. So, what happened yesterday?

**Jeremy:** Well, I was fishing when this lady came past with her dog. It jumped into the water and couldn't get out.

**Ellie:** So what did you do?

**Jeremy:** Well, I tried to get hold of him. He didn't like it but I got him out. Then he started to look strange.

**Ellie:** What do you mean?

**Jeremy:** He obviously wasn't well. The lady took him to the vet. The vet gave him some medicine and said the dog got sick because the water was polluted.

**Ellie:** Then how do you feel?

**Jeremy:** Well, I've got these red spots on my arms but other than that I'm okay.

**Ellie:** Oh. Those look painful. Hope that goes away soon. Thanks, Jeremy.

## Vocabulary in Each Unit

### Unit 1

#### Getting Ready

*nationality /næʃə'næləti/ <i>n.</i> 国籍	5
Australian /ə'streɪliən/ <i>adj.</i> 澳大利亚的	5
<i>n.</i> 澳大利亚人	
Canadian /kə'neɪdiən/ <i>n.</i> 加拿大人	5
<i>adj.</i> 加拿大的	
Indian /'ɪndiən/ <i>n.</i> 印度人 <i>adj.</i> 印度的	5
Japanese /,dʒeɪpə'ni:z/ <i>n.</i> 日本人; 日语	5
<i>adj.</i> 日本的, 日本人的	
Russian /'rʌʃn/ <i>n.</i> 俄罗斯人; 俄语	5
*gesture /'dʒestʃə/ <i>n.</i> 手势; 姿势	5
*thumb /θʌm/ <i>n.</i> 拇指	5
*wave /weɪv/ <i>v.</i> 挥手; 挥臂 <i>n.</i> 波浪; 海浪	5

#### Lesson 1

simply /'sɪmpli/ <i>adv.</i> 仅仅, 只是; 简单地	6
nod /nɒd/ <i>v.</i> 点头	6
agreement /ə'ɡri:mənt/ <i>n.</i> (意见或看法)	
一致; 协定	6
finger /'fɪŋɡə/ <i>n.</i> 手指	6
silence /'saɪləns/ <i>n.</i> 安静; 沉默	6
differently /'dɪfrəntli/ <i>adv.</i> 不同地	6
western /'westən/ <i>adj.</i> 西方的	6
*shrug /ʃrʌɡ/ <i>v.</i> 耸肩	6
shoulder /'ʃəʊldə/ <i>n.</i> 肩, 肩膀	6
Asian /'eɪʃn/ <i>adj.</i> 亚洲人的 <i>n.</i> 亚洲人	6
*bow /baʊ/ <i>v.</i> 鞠躬, 点头	6
*greet /ɡri:t/ <i>v.</i> 和 (某人) 打招呼	6
*custom /'kʌstəm/ <i>n.</i> 习惯; 风俗	6
certain /'sɜ:tɪn/ <i>adj.</i> 某种; 肯定	6
traveller /'trævlə/ <i>n.</i> 旅行者	6
kiss /kɪs/ <i>v.</i> 亲吻 <i>n.</i> 吻	6
European /juərə'pi:ən/ <i>adj.</i> 欧洲的	6
*cheek /tʃi:k/ <i>n.</i> 面颊, 脸颊	6
*rude /ru:d/ <i>adj.</i> 粗鲁的; 无礼的	6

bottom /'bɒtəm/ <i>n.</i> 底部	6
*pat /pæt/ <i>v.</i> 轻拍	7
anger /'æŋɡə/ <i>n.</i> 怒火, 怒气	7
*clap /klæp/ <i>v.</i> 鼓掌, 拍手	7

#### Lesson 2

*mate /meɪt/ <i>n.</i> 朋友, 伙伴	8
*gas /ɡæs/ <i>n.</i> 汽油; 天然气; 气体	8
*sneaker /'sni:kə/ <i>n.</i> 运动鞋	8
*petrol /'petrəl/ <i>n.</i> 汽油	8
*confused /kən'fju:zd/ <i>adj.</i> 糊涂的, 迷惑的	8
standard /'stændəd/ <i>adj.</i> 标准的, 正常的	8
<i>n.</i> 标准	
spelling /'spelɪŋ/ <i>n.</i> 拼写	8
grey /ɡreɪ/ <i>adj.</i> 灰色的 (=gray)	8
*native /'neɪtv/ <i>adj.</i> 本地的; 出生地的	8
speaker /'spi:kə/ <i>n.</i> 说话者; 发音者;	8
扬声器	
*confusing /kən'fju:zɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i> 难以理解的, 不清楚的	8
check /tʃek/ <i>n.</i> 账单 <i>v.</i> 检查	8
note /nəʊt/ <i>n.</i> 钞票; 笔记	8
used /ju:st/ <i>adj.</i> 习惯于	8
/ju:zd/ <i>adj.</i> 用过的, 旧的	
*jumper /'dʒʌmpə/ <i>n.</i> (毛或棉的) 针织套衫	8
*apartment /ə'pɑ:tmənt/ <i>n.</i> 公寓套房	8

#### Lesson 3

*tip /tɪp/ <i>n.</i> 实用的提示; 小费	10
*structure /'strʌktʃə/ <i>n.</i> 结构	10
*chant /tʃɑ:nt/ <i>n.</i> 重复唱的歌词; 歌谣	10
as for 至于; 关于	10
work out 计划, 思考; 进展顺利	10
by the way 顺便提一句	10
*reward /rɪ'wɔ:d/ <i>v.</i> 奖励, 奖赏	10
<i>n.</i> 奖励; 回报	
method /'meθəd/ <i>n.</i> 方法	10

说明: 未做标记的词汇为课标词汇、根据构词法可以推导的词汇和短语。加\*的词汇为扩展词汇, 只要求认读。



*suit /sju:t/ v. 适合	10	drop /drɒp/ v. 落下 n. 滴; 水珠	18
make a difference 有所作为	11	hole /həʊl/ n. 洞; 孔	18
in order to 为了, 目的	11	land /lənd/ n. 陆地 v. 着陆	18
*familiar /fə'mɪljə/ adj. 熟悉的	11	*character /'kærəktə/ n. 人物, 角色	18
*subtitle /'sʌbtɪtl/ n. 字幕	11	bright /braɪt/ adj. 聪明的; 明亮的	18
jot down 快速记下	11	reader /'ri:də/ n. 读者; 电子阅读器	18
*phrase /freɪz/ n. 短语, 词组	11	force /fɔ:s/ v. 迫使, 强迫 n. 力量	18
*continuously /kən'tɪnjuəsli/ adv. 不断地, 持续地	11	society /sə'saɪəti/ n. 社会	18
*image /'ɪmɪdʒ/ n. 图像	11	*thief /θi:f/ n. 贼, 小偷	19
		steal /sti:l/ v. 偷, 偷窃	19
		preparation /,prepe'reɪʃn/ n. 准备	19
		hang /hæŋ/ v. 悬挂	19

## Communication Workshop

*frustrated /frə'stretɪd/ adj. 懊丧, 懊恼	12
*topic /'tɒpɪk/ n. 主题; 话题	12
*refer /rɪ'fɜ:/ v. 参考; 涉及	12
refer to 查阅; 参考	12
table /'teɪbl/ n. 表格; 桌子	12
*verb /vɜ:b/ n. 动词	12
*tense /tens/ n. 时态	12
have a try 尝试一下	12
no longer 不再	12

## Unit 2

### Getting Ready

*comic /'kɒmɪk/ n. 连环画杂志	17
*classic /'klæsɪk/ n. 名著	17
bookshop /'bʊkʃɒp/ n. 书店	17
how-to adj. 提供指南的	17

### Lesson 4

fly /flaɪ/ n. 苍蝇 v. 飞	18
*adventure /əd'ventʃə/ n. 冒险, 冒险经历	18
*wonderland /'wʌndələnd/ n. 仙境	18
*orphan /'ɔ:fən/ n. 孤儿	18
*curiosity /kjʊəri'ɒsəti/ n. 好奇心	18
friendship /'frendʃɪp/ n. 友谊	18
*publish /'pʌblɪʃ/ v. 出版	18
remain /rɪ'meɪn/ v. 仍然是, 保持不变	18
silly /'sɪli/ adj. 愚蠢的	18

### Lesson 5

*quotation /kwəʊ'teɪʃn/ n. 引语, 引文	20
*inspiring /ɪn'spaɪərɪŋ/ adj. 鼓舞 人心的, 激励人的	20
form /fɔ:m/ v. 养成, 形成	20
continuing /kən'tɪnjuɪŋ/ adj. 连续不断的	20
need /ni:d/ n. 需求 v. 需要	20
advantage /əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ/ n. 优势, 有利条件	20
well-known adj. 著名的, 众所周知的	20
a world of 大量的, 无数的	20
depend /dɪ'pend/ v. 取决于, 决定于	20
depend on 取决于; 依靠	20
*inspire /ɪn'spaɪə/ v. 激励; 启发思考	20
period /'pɪərɪəd/ n. 一段时间, 时期	20

### Lesson 6

*prediction /prɪ'dɪkʃn/ n. 预测	22
paint /peɪnt/ v. 在……上刷油漆 n. 油漆	22
juicy /'dʒu:sɪ/ adj. 多汁的	22
silent /'saɪlənt/ adj. 沉默的; 安静的	22
*focus /'fəʊkəs/ v. 集中(注意力、精力等)	22
painting /'peɪntɪŋ/ n. 刷油漆; 绘画, 油画	22
artist /'ɑ:tɪst/ n. 艺术家	22
carelessly /'keələsli/ adv. 漫不经心地; 粗心地	22

*sweep /swi:p/ v. 轻轻擦	22
back and forth 反复来回	22
touch /tʌtʃ/ n. 一点儿, 少许; 触觉	22
v. 触摸	
take a look at 看一下……	22
move /mu:v/ n. 动作	22
consider /kən'sɪdə/ v. 仔细考虑; 认为	22
offer /'ɒfə/ n. 建议; 主动提议	22
honestly /'ɒnɪstli/ adv. 诚实地	22
paintbrush /'peɪntbrʌʃ/ n. 漆刷	22
*eagerly /'i:gəli/ adv. 热切地	22
regret /rɪ'gret/ n. 遗憾 v. 感到遗憾	22

### Communication Workshop

lover /'lʌvə/ n. 爱好者	24
*benefit /'benɪfɪt/ v. 使受益	24
*aspect /'æspekt/ n. 方面	24
unlike /ʌn'laɪk/ prep. 不像, 与……不同	24
*extra /'ekstrə/ adj. 额外的	24
as long as 只要	24
disadvantage /,dɪsəd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ/ n. 不利因素	25
*summary /'sʌməri/ n. 总结	25

### Unit 3

#### Getting Ready

creativity /,kri:'eɪtɪvəti/ n. 创造力	29
creative /kri:'eɪtɪv/ adj. 有创造力的	29
inventor /ɪn'ventə/ n. 发明者, 发明家	29
musician /mju:'zɪʃn/ n. 音乐家, 作曲家	29
*design /dr'zain/ v. 设计 n. 设计	29

#### Lesson 7

gun /gʌn/ n. 枪	30
bridge /brɪdʒ/ n. 桥, 桥梁	30
*helicopter /'helɪkɒptə/ n. 直升机	30
adding machine 计算器	30
instrument /ɪn'strəmənt/ n. 仪器; 乐器	30
northern /'nɔ:ðən/ adj. 北方的; 向北的	30

Italian /ɪ'tæliən/ adj. 意大利的	30
painter /'peɪntə/ n. 画家	30
engineer /,endʒɪ'nɪə/ n. 工程师, 设计师	30
pioneer /,paɪə'nɪə/ n. 先锋, 先驱	30
as well as 也	30
far /fɑ:/ adv. 非常, 大大	30
ahead of 早于; 在……前面	30
*code /kəʊd/ n. 密码	30
left-handed adj. 左撇子的	30
either way 两者都一样	30
*mirror /'mɪrə/ n. 镜子	30
backwards /'bækwədz/ adv. 倒着地	30
absent /'æbsənt/ adj. 缺席的; 缺少的	31
cancel /'kænsəl/ v. 取消	31

#### Lesson 8

disagree /,dɪsə'ɡri:/ v. 不同意, 持不同意见	32
*weapon /'wepən/ n. 武器	32
*debate /dr'beɪt/ n. 辩论 v. 辩论	32
*position /pə'zɪʃn/ n. 观点; 位置	32
*response /rɪ'spɒns/ n. 回答, 回复	32
cut down 减少; 砍倒	32
*nuclear /'nju:klɪə/ adj. 核能的	32
*power /'paʊə/ n. 能; 能量	32
provide /prə'vaɪd/ v. 提供	32
*energy /'enədʒi/ n. 能量	32
danger /'deɪndʒə/ n. 危险, 风险	32
*involved /ɪn'vɒlvd/ adj. 有关的	32
traffic jam 堵车	32
*moreover /mɔ:'rəʊvə/ adv. 此外, 而且	32
pollute /pə'lju:t/ v. 污染	32
pollution /pə'lju:ʃn/ n. 污染	32
*bite /baɪt/ v. 咬	33
owner /'əʊnə/ n. 主人; 所有者	33
*blame /bleɪm/ v. 责怪	33

#### Lesson 9

invent /ɪn'vent/ v. 发明, 创造	34
*earmuff /'ɪəməf/ n. 耳罩	34



*crayon holder 蜡笔套	34
*Wristies /'rɪstɪz/ <i>n.</i> 手腕套	34
*popsicle /'pɒpsɪkl/ <i>n.</i> 冰棍, 冰棒	34
*stir /stɜ:/ <i>n.</i> , <i>v.</i> 搅动, 搅拌	34
treat /tri:t/ <i>n.</i> 乐趣, 乐事	34
ice-skate <i>v.</i> 滑冰	34
cover /'kʌvə/ <i>v.</i> 盖; 覆盖	34
thinking /'θɪŋkɪŋ/ <i>n.</i> 思考	34
*wire /waɪə/ <i>n.</i> 金属丝	34
*sew /səʊ/ <i>v.</i> 缝, 做针线活	34
*fur /fɜ:/ <i>n.</i> (动物的)皮毛; 软毛	34
*steel /sti:l/ <i>n.</i> 钢	34
*headband /'hedbænd/ <i>n.</i> 头带, 束发带	34
broken /'brəʊkən/ <i>adj.</i> 破损的; 出了毛病的	35
*tube /tju:b/ <i>n.</i> 管, 管子	35
fit /fɪt/ <i>v.</i> 可容纳; 适合	35
*tightly /'taɪtli/ <i>adv.</i> 紧紧地	35
*mitten /'mɪtn/ <i>n.</i> 连指手套	35
*wrist /rɪst/ <i>n.</i> 手腕	35
business /'bɪznəs/ <i>n.</i> 公司; 生意	35
run /rʌn/ <i>v.</i> 经营; 跑	35

### Communication Workshop

*laser /'leɪzə/ <i>n.</i> 激光	36
*typesetting /'taɪpsetɪŋ/ <i>n.</i> 排版	36
come up with 想出, 找到	36
developer /dr'veləpə/ <i>n.</i> 开发者, 研制者	36
*publishing /'pʌblɪʃɪŋ/ <i>n.</i> 出版	36
industry /'ɪndəstri/ <i>n.</i> 产业; 工业	36
modern /'mɒdən/ <i>adj.</i> 当代的, 现代的	36

## Unit 4

### Getting Ready

circle /'sɜ:kəl/ <i>v.</i> 盘旋, 环行	41
international /,ɪntə'næʃnəl/ <i>adj.</i> 国际的	41
international space station 国际空间站	41

lift /lɪft/ <i>v.</i> 提起 <i>n.</i> 电梯	41
lift off 发射, 升空	41
manned /'mænd/ <i>adj.</i> 载人的; 有人控 制的, 需人操作的	41
*spacecraft /'speɪskrɑ:ft/ <i>n.</i> 航天器, 宇宙飞船	41
*flight /flaɪt/ <i>n.</i> 航行, 飞行	41
space flight 太空飞行	41
spaceship /'speɪsʃɪp/ <i>n.</i> 宇宙飞船	41
unmanned /,ʌn'mænd/ <i>adj.</i> 无人的; 无人控制的	41
planet /'plænɪt/ <i>n.</i> 行星	41

### Lesson 10

*gravity /'grævəti/ <i>n.</i> 重力, 地球引力	42
*float /fləʊt/ <i>v.</i> 浮动, 漂浮	42
action /'ækʃn/ <i>n.</i> 行动	42
tie /taɪ/ <i>v.</i> (用绳、线等)系, 拴, 绑	42
rise /raɪz/ <i>v.</i> 升起; 提高	42
set /set/ <i>v.</i> 落下; 放置	42
*alarm /ə'lɑ:m/ <i>n.</i> 闹钟	42
*muscle /'mʌsl/ <i>n.</i> 肌肉	42

### Lesson 11

*launch /lɔ:ntʃ/ <i>v.</i> 发射; 发起 <i>n.</i> (航天器的)发射	44
*satellite /'sætələɪt/ <i>n.</i> 人造卫星	44
achievement /ə'tʃi:vment/ <i>n.</i> 成就, 成绩	44
*briefly /'brɪ:flɪ/ <i>adv.</i> 简短地; 短暂地	44
*female /'fi:meɪl/ <i>adj.</i> 女性的	44
*advance /əd'vɑ:ns/ <i>v.</i> 进步; 前进	44
*effort /'efət/ <i>n.</i> 努力	44
*citizen /'sɪtɪzn/ <i>n.</i> 公民, 市民	44

### Lesson 12

*alien /'eɪljən/ <i>n.</i> 外星人 <i>adj.</i> 外国的; 外星的	46
unknown /,ʌn'nəʊn/ <i>adj.</i> 未知的,	46

	不详的	
*captain /'kæptɪn/	<i>n.</i> 船长; 机长	46
spacesuit /'speɪssju:t/	<i>n.</i> 航天服, 宇航服	46
uncomfortable /ʌn'kʌmfətəbl/	<i>adj.</i> 不舒服的	46
take off	脱去; 去掉	46
pick /pɪk/	<i>v.</i> 挑选; 摘	46
pick up	拾起, 捡起	46
unlucky /ʌn'lʌki/	<i>adj.</i> 不幸的	47
*attack /ə'tæk/	<i>v.</i> 攻击	47
Earth /ɜ:θ/	<i>n.</i> 地球; 世界	47

### Communication Workshop

*admire /əd'maɪə/	<i>v.</i> 钦佩, 赞赏	48
once /wʌns/	<i>conj.</i> 一……就	48
physics /'fɪzɪks/	<i>n.</i> 物理学	48
chemistry /'kemɪstri/	<i>n.</i> 化学	48
*mission /'mɪʃn/	<i>n.</i> 太空飞行任务	48
role model	榜样	48
realise /'ri:əlaɪz/	<i>v.</i> 实现; 意识到	48
*faithfully /'feɪθfəli/	<i>adv.</i> 忠诚地	48

### Unit 5

#### Getting Ready

*literature /'lɪtərəʃə/	<i>n.</i> 文学, 文学作品	53
*novel /'nɒvl/	<i>n.</i> (长篇)小说	53

#### Lesson 13

*gable /'geɪbl/	<i>n.</i> 三角墙, 山墙	54
*carriage /'kærɪdʒ/	<i>n.</i> (旧时载客的) 四轮马车; (火车的)客车厢	54
passenger /'pæsɪndʒə/	<i>n.</i> 乘客, 旅客	54
*braid /breɪd/	<i>n.</i> 发辫	54
*freckle /'frekl/	<i>n.</i> 雀斑	54
make up one's mind	决定, 下定决心	54
*cherry /'tʃeri/	<i>n.</i> 樱桃	54
lovely /'lʌvli/	<i>adj.</i> 可爱的; 令人愉快的	54

shyly /'ʃaɪli/	<i>adv.</i> 羞怯地	54
*normally /'nɔ:məli/	<i>adv.</i> 通常, 正常情况下	54
*apologise /ə'pɒlədʒaɪz/	<i>v.</i> 道歉	54
*plot /plɒt/	<i>n.</i> 故事情节	55

#### Lesson 14

*trunk /trʌŋk/	<i>n.</i> 象鼻; 树干	56
*tusk /tʌsk/	<i>n.</i> (象或某些其他动物的) 长牙	56
*flat /flæt/	<i>adj.</i> 扁平的 <i>n.</i> 公寓	56
*hose /həʊz/	<i>n.</i> 橡皮管	56
*iron /'aɪən/	<i>n.</i> 铁	56
*mat /mæt/	<i>n.</i> 小地毯, 垫子	56
thick /θɪk/	<i>adj.</i> 粗的; 厚的	56
upon /ə'pɒn/	<i>prep.</i> 当……时; 在……上	56
once upon a time	很久以前	56
king /kɪŋ/	<i>n.</i> 国王	56
officer /'ɒfɪsə/	<i>n.</i> 官员; 军官	56
*cloth /klɒθ/	<i>n.</i> 布; 布料	56
guard /gɑ:d/	<i>n.</i> 卫兵, 警卫	56
*spot /spɒt/	<i>n.</i> 地点; 斑点	56
*obviously /'ɒbvɪəsli/	<i>adv.</i> 明显地, 显然	56
jacket /'dʒækt/	<i>n.</i> 夹克衫	57

#### Lesson 15

*series /'sɪəri:z/	<i>n.</i> 系列	58
*graduation /,grædʒʊ'eɪʃn/	<i>n.</i> 毕业	58
*epic /'epɪk/	<i>adj.</i> 巨大的	58
*scale /skeɪl/	<i>n.</i> 程度	58
usual /'ju:ʒʊəl/	<i>adj.</i> 寻常的, 通常的	58
marriage /'mæɪrɪdʒ/	<i>n.</i> 婚姻	58
raise /reɪz/	<i>v.</i> 抚养; 提升	58
*resolution /,rezə'lju:ʃn/	<i>n.</i> 结果; 解决	58
rich /rɪtʃ/	<i>adj.</i> 富有的	58
direct /dɪ'rekt/	<i>adj.</i> 直接的 <i>v.</i> 投入	58
*pretend /prɪ'tend/	<i>v.</i> 假装	58
other than	除……之外; 不同于	58
final /'faɪnl/	<i>adj.</i> 最终的, 最后的	58



theme park 主题公园	58
*related /rɪ'leɪtɪd/ <i>adj.</i> 相关的, 有联系的	58
related to 与……相关的	58
remarry /rɪ'mæəri/ <i>v.</i> 再婚	58
separate /'sepəreɪt/ <i>v.</i> 分离; 划分	59
carelessness /'keələsnɪs/ <i>n.</i> 疏忽大意	59

### Communication Workshop

celebrate /'selɪbreɪt/ <i>v.</i> 庆祝, 祝贺	60
enjoy oneself 过得愉快	60
rush /rʌʃ/ <i>v.</i> 迅速移动	60
*climax /'klaɪmæks/ <i>n.</i> 高潮; 顶点	61

### Unit 6

#### Getting Ready

*quality /'kwɒləti/ <i>n.</i> 品格; 质量	65
*behave /brɪ'heɪv/ <i>v.</i> 表现	65

#### Lesson 16

*modest /'mɒdɪst/ <i>adj.</i> 谦虚的	66
hard-working <i>adj.</i> 工作努力的; 辛勤的	66
*draft /dra:ft/ <i>n.</i> 运动员选拔; 草稿 <i>v.</i> 选拔	66
name /neɪm/ <i>v.</i> 评为; 命名	66
*voting /'vəʊtɪŋ/ <i>n.</i> 选举, 投票	66
*despite /drɪ'spaɪt/ <i>prep.</i> 尽管; 即使	66
*challenging /'tʃælɪndʒɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i> 有挑战性的	66
cultural /'kʌltʃərəl/ <i>adj.</i> 文化的	66
teammate /'ti:mmeɪt/ <i>n.</i> 队友	66
*personality /pɜ:sə'næləti/ <i>n.</i> 性格, 个性	66
pay off 成功; 奏效	66
value /'vælju:/ <i>v.</i> 重视, 珍视	66
*charity /'tʃærəti/ <i>n.</i> 慈善; 慈善机构	66
*found /faʊnd/ <i>v.</i> 创建, 创办	66
*foundation /faʊn'deɪʃn/ <i>n.</i> 基金会; 基础	66
*retire /rɪ'taɪə/ <i>v.</i> 退役; 退休	66

#### Lesson 17

policewoman /pe'li:s wʊmən/ <i>n.</i> 女警察	68
treasure /'treɪzə/ <i>v.</i> 珍视, 珍爱	68
importantly /ɪm'pɔ:tntli/ <i>adv.</i> 重要地	68
*original /ə'ɒrɪdʒənəl/ <i>adj.</i> 原来的, 起初的	68
*owe /əʊ/ <i>v.</i> 归功于, 归因于; 欠(债)	68
*outdoor /'aʊtdɔ:/ <i>adj.</i> 户外的	68
*retired /rɪ'taɪəd/ <i>adj.</i> 退休的	68
look down on 轻视, 看不起	68
*organised /'ɔ:gənaɪzɪd/ <i>adj.</i> 有条理的	68
caring /'keərɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i> 乐于助人的, 体贴人的	69

#### Lesson 18

*digital /'dɪdʒɪtl/ <i>adj.</i> 数码的	70
*co-founder <i>n.</i> 共同创立者	70
*inc. 公司 (=incorporated)	70
birth /bɜ:θ/ <i>n.</i> 出生	70
*formal /'fɔ:məl/ <i>adj.</i> 正规的	70
schooling /'sku:lɪŋ/ <i>n.</i> 学校教育	70
afford /ə'fɔ:d/ <i>v.</i> 承担得起	70
fire /'faɪə/ <i>v.</i> 解雇; 射击	70
a number of 许多	70
impatient /ɪm'peɪjnt/ <i>adj.</i> 不耐烦的	70
state /steɪt/ <i>v.</i> 陈述	70
*bluntly /'blʌntli/ <i>adv.</i> 直言地, 单刀直入地	70
put up with 承受, 忍受	70
*recognise /'rekəɡnaɪz/ <i>v.</i> 公认, 承认	70
*revolution /,revə'lju:ʃən/ <i>n.</i> 革命; 改革	70
*negative /'neɡətɪv/ <i>adj.</i> 负面的; 消极的	71

### Communication Workshop

*beyond /brɪ'jɒnd/ <i>prep.</i> 超出	72
*pressure /'preʃə/ <i>n.</i> 压力	72

## Unit 7

### Lesson 19

*fascinate /'fæsɪneɪt/ v. 深深吸引, 迷住	78
trade /treɪd/ v. 互相交换; 做买卖	78
n. 贸易	
play an important role 发挥重要作用	78
get away 度假, 休假	78
ancient /'eɪnʃənt/ adj. 古老的	78
capital /'kæpɪtl/ n. 首都	78
*monument /'mɒnjumənt/ n. 纪念碑	78
*edge /edʒ/ n. 边, 边缘	78
*desert /'dezət/ n. 沙漠	78
find out 了解, 弄清楚	78
connection /kə'nekʃən/ n. 连接; 关联	78
*major /'meɪdʒəl/ adj. 重要的, 主要的	78
north-west 西北	78

### Lesson 20

*despair /drɪ'speə/ n. 绝望	80
ups and downs 沉浮; 兴衰	80
*anonymous /ə'nɒnɪməs/ adj. 匿名的;	80
姓名不详的	
*path /pɑθ/ n. 道路	80
*verse /vɜ:s/ n. 诗节	81
*metaphor /'metəfə/ n. 暗喻	81

### Lesson 21

sub-zero 零度以下的	82
*destination /,destɪ'neɪʃn/ n. 目的地	82
*overcome /əʊvə'kʌm/ v. 克服, 解决	82
at times 有时	82
*route /ru:t/ n. 路线	82
*challenge /'tʃæləndʒ/ n. 挑战	82
*nut /nʌt/ n. 坚果	82
proper /'prɒpəl/ adj. 像样的; 正确的	82
*injury /'ɪndʒəri/ n. 伤害, 损伤	82
shape /ʃeɪp/ n. 状况; 形状	82

*sharp /ʃɑ:p/ adj. 尖锐的	83
------------------------	----

### Communication Workshop

historical /hɪ'stɒrɪkl/ adj. (有关)历史的	84
shopping mall 购物广场	84
*waterfront /'wɔ:təfrʌnt/ n. 滨水区	84
landmark /'lændmɑ:k/ n. 地标; 里程碑	84
*style /stɑɪl/ n. 风格	84
*exist /ɪg'zɪst/ v. 存在	84

## Unit 8

### Getting Ready

discovery /drɪ'sklʌvəri/ n. 发现	89
lab /læb/ n. 实验室	89
(=laboratory /lə'bɒrətəri/)	

### Lesson 22

*antibiotic /,æntɪbaɪ'ɒtɪk/ n. 抗菌素,	90
抗生素	
century /'sentʃəri/ n. 百年; 世纪	90
*disease /drɪ'zi:z/ n. 疾病	90
*cure /kjʊə/ v. 治愈	90
correctly /kə'rektli/ adv. 正确地	90
DNA 脱氧核糖核酸	90
block /blɒk/ n. 立方体; 街区	90
building block 组成部分, 构成要素	90
pass on 传给	90
*characteristic /,kærəktə'rɪstɪk/ n.	90
特征, 特点	
a great deal 大量	90
able /eɪbl/ adj. 能够……的; 可以……的	90
be able to 能够	90
*award /ə'wɔ:d/ v. 授予, 奖励	90
n. 奖; 奖金	
first-ever 首次的	90
*skin /skɪn/ n. 皮肤	90



\*suitcase /'sju:tkeɪs/ *n.* (旅行用的) 90  
手提箱

\*effect /ɪ'fekt/ *n.* 影响; 效果 91

### Lesson 23

\*bulb /bʌlb/ *n.* 电灯泡 92

above all 最重要的是, 尤其是 92

in closing 最后, 在结束前 92

\*honour /'ɒnə/ *n.* 荣幸; 尊敬 92

*v.* 给予表扬; 尊敬

present /prɪ'zent/ *v.* 颁发, 授予 92

\*equipment /ɪ'kwɪpmənt/ *n.* 设备, 装备 92

researcher /rɪ'sɜ:tʃə/ *n.* 研究人员 92

round /raʊnd/ *n.* 一阵 92

*adj.* 圆形的; 环形的

\*applause /ə'plɔ:z/ *n.* 鼓掌, 喝彩 92

chairman /'tʃeəmən/ *n.* 主席 92

### Lesson 24

\*sprout /spraut/ *n.* 苗, 新芽 94

\*pot /pɒt/ *n.* 罐, 瓶, 壶 94

\*soil /sɔɪl/ *n.* 土壤 94

\*observation /,ɒbzə'veɪʃn/ *n.* 观察 94

fully /'fʊli/ *adv.* 充分地, 完全地 94

yet /jet/ *adv.* 还, 尚 94

patient /'peɪʃnt/ *adj.* 有耐心的 94

\*cm=centimetre *n.* 厘米 95

patience /'peɪʃns/ *n.* 耐心 95

### Communication Workshop

overweight /,əʊvə'weɪt/ *adj.* 超重的 96

\*gradually /'grædʒuəli/ *adv.* 逐渐地; 96  
逐步地

### Unit 9 Getting Ready

reuse /,ri:'ju:z/ *v.* 再次使用 101

take action 采取行动 101

### Lesson 25

ton /tʌn/ *n.* 吨 102

\*decay /dɪ'keɪ/ *v.* (使)烂, 腐朽 102

\*replace /rɪ'pleɪs/ *v.* 代替 102

\*bin /bɪn/ *n.* 垃圾箱 102

\*recycling /ri:'saɪklɪŋ/ *n.* 回收利用 102

\*reduce /rɪ'dju:s/ *v.* 减少, 缩小 102

\*global /'gləʊbl/ *adj.* 全球的, 全世 102  
界的

global warming 全球变暖 102

\*organise /'ɔ:gənaɪz/ *v.* 组织 102

car pool 拼车 102

take turns 轮流 102

### Lesson 26

to start with 首先 104

as usual 像往常一样 104

get hold of 抓住 104

\*vet /vet/ *n.* 兽医 104

painful /'peɪnfl/ *adj.* 令人疼痛的; 104  
令人痛苦的

handbag /'hændbæg/ *n.* 手提包 105

### Lesson 27

greatly /'greɪtli/ *adv.* 非常, 很 106

farmland /'fɑ:mlænd/ *n.* 耕地, 农田 106

\*affect /ə'fekt/ *v.* 影响 106

\*expand /ɪk'spænd/ *v.* 扩大, 增加 106

worth /wɜ:θ/ *adj.* 有……的价值 106

\*seedling /'si:dliŋ/ *n.* 秧苗, 幼苗 106

proudly /'praʊdli/ *adv.* 骄傲地 106

\*millionaire /,mɪljə'neə/ *n.* 百万富翁 106

\*prevent /prɪ'vent/ v. 防止, 阻止 106

### Communication Workshop

towards /tə'wɔ:dz/ prep. 向, 朝, 对着 108

\*tap /tæp/ n. 水龙头 108

\*flush /flʌʃ/ v. 冲(抽水马桶); 脸红 108

take part 参加, 参与 108

### Places and Names

West /west/ n. 西方(国家) 6

the Middle East 中东地区 6

Oxford /'ɒksfəd/ n. 牛津 18

Harvard 哈佛 58

NBA 美国职业篮球联赛 66

Houston Rockets 休斯顿火箭队 66

Rookie of the Month 月度新星 66

NBA All-Star 美职篮全明星赛 66

Oscar 奥斯卡奖 70

Antarctic /æn'tɑ:ktɪk/ n. 南极洲 77

Atlantic Ocean 大西洋 77

Europe /'jʊərəp/ n. 欧洲 77

Indian Ocean 印度洋 77

Pacific Ocean 太平洋 77

the Silk Road 丝绸之路 78

the Gobi Desert 戈壁滩 78

Central Asia 中亚 78

Macau /mə'kəʊ/ n. 澳门 78

Arctic /'ɑ:ktɪk/ n. 北极地区 82

the Bund 上海外滩 84

the Oriental Pearl Tower 东方明珠 84

Nobel Prize 诺贝尔奖 90



## Word List

### A

a great deal 大量	90	artist /'ɑ:trɪst/ <i>n.</i> 艺术家	22
a number of 许多	70	as for 至于; 关于	10
a world of 大量的, 无数的	20	as long as 只要	24
able /'eɪbl/ <i>adj.</i> 能够……的; 可以……的	90	as usual 像往常一样	103
above all 最重要的是, 尤其是	92	as well as 也	30
absent /'æbsənt/ <i>adj.</i> 缺席的; 缺少的	31	Asian /'eɪʃn/ <i>adj.</i> 亚洲人的 <i>n.</i> 亚洲人	6
achievement /ə'tʃi:vmənt/ <i>n.</i> 成就, 成绩	44	*aspect /'æspekt/ <i>n.</i> 方面	24
action /'ækʃn/ <i>n.</i> 行动	42	at times 有时	82
adding machine 计算器	30	Atlantic Ocean 大西洋	77
*admire /əd'maɪə/ <i>v.</i> 钦佩, 赞赏	48	*attack /ə'tæk/ <i>v.</i> 攻击	47
*advance /əd'vɑ:ns/ <i>v.</i> 进步; 前进	44	Australian /ə'streɪlɪən/ <i>adj.</i> 澳大利亚的	5
advantage /əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ/ <i>n.</i> 优势,	20	<i>n.</i> 澳大利亚人	
有利条件		*award /ə'wɔ:d/ <i>v.</i> 授予, 奖励	90
*adventure /əd'ventʃə/ <i>n.</i> 冒险, 冒险	18	<i>n.</i> 奖; 奖金	
经历			
*affect /ə'fekt/ <i>v.</i> 影响	106	<b>B</b>	
afford /ə'fɔ:d/ <i>v.</i> 承担得起	70	back and forth 反复来回	22
agreement /ə'gri:mənt/ <i>n.</i> (意见或看	6	backwards /'bækwədʒ/ <i>adv.</i> 倒着地	30
法)一致; 协定		be able to 能够	90
ahead of 早于; 在……前面	30	*behave /br'herv/ <i>v.</i> 表现	65
*alarm /ə'lɑ:m/ <i>n.</i> 闹钟	42	*benefit /'benɪfɪt/ <i>v.</i> 使受益	24
*alien /'eɪljən/ <i>n.</i> 外星人	46	*beyond /br'jɒnd/ <i>prep.</i> 超出	72
<i>adj.</i> 外星的; 外国的		*bin /bɪn/ <i>n.</i> 垃圾箱	102
ancient /'eɪnʃənt/ <i>adj.</i> 古老的	78	birth /bɜ:θ/ <i>n.</i> 出生	70
anger /'æŋgə/ <i>n.</i> 怒火, 怒气	7	*bite /baɪt/ <i>v.</i> 咬	33
*anonymous /ə'nɒnɪməs/ <i>adj.</i> 匿名的	80	*blame /bleɪm/ <i>v.</i> 责怪	33
Antarctic /æn'tɑ:ktɪk/ <i>n.</i> 南极洲	77	block /blɒk/ <i>n.</i> 立方体; 街区	90
*antibiotic /,æntɪbaɪ'ɒtɪk/ <i>n.</i> 抗菌素,	90	*bluntly /'blʌntli/ <i>adv.</i> 直言地, 单刀	70
抗生素		直入地	
*apartment /ə'pɑ:tmənt/ <i>n.</i> 公寓套房	8	bookshop /'bʊkʃɒp/ <i>n.</i> 书店	17
*apologise /ə'pɒlədʒaɪz/ <i>v.</i> 道歉	54	bottom /'bɒtəm/ <i>n.</i> 底部	6
*applause /ə'plɔ:z/ <i>n.</i> 鼓掌, 喝彩	92	*bow /bau/ <i>v.</i> 鞠躬, 点头	6
Arctic /'ɑ:ktɪk/ <i>n.</i> 北极地区	82	*braid /breɪd/ <i>n.</i> 发辫	54
		bridge /brɪdʒ/ <i>n.</i> 桥, 桥梁	30

说明: 未做标记的词汇为课标词汇、根据构词法可以推导的词汇和短语。加\*的词汇为扩展词汇, 只要求认读。

*briefly /'bri:flɪ/ <i>adv.</i> 简短地; 短暂地	44	chemistry /'kemɪstri/ <i>n.</i> 化学	48
bright /braɪt/ <i>adj.</i> 聪明的; 明亮的	18	*cherry /'tʃeri/ <i>n.</i> 樱桃	54
broken /'brəʊkən/ <i>adj.</i> 破损的; 出了毛病的	35	circle /'sɜ:kəl/ <i>v.</i> 盘旋, 环行	41
building block 组成部分, 构成要素	90	*citizen /'sɪtɪzn/ <i>n.</i> 公民, 市民	44
*bulb /bʌlb/ <i>n.</i> 电灯泡	92	*clap /klæp/ <i>v.</i> 鼓掌, 拍手	7
business /'bɪznəs/ <i>n.</i> 公司; 生意	35	*classic /'klæsɪk/ <i>n.</i> 名著	17
by the way 顺便提一句	10	*climax /'klaɪmæks/ <i>n.</i> 高潮; 顶点	61
<b>C</b>		*cloth /klɒθ/ <i>n.</i> 布; 布料	56
Canadian /kə'neɪdɪən/ <i>n.</i> 加拿大人	5	*cm=centimetre <i>n.</i> 厘米	95
<i>adj.</i> 加拿大的		*code /kəʊd/ <i>n.</i> 密码	30
cancel /'kænsəl/ <i>v.</i> 取消	31	*co-founder <i>n.</i> 共同创立者	70
capital /'kæpɪtl/ <i>n.</i> 首都	78	come up with 想出, 找到	36
*captain /'kæptɪn/ <i>n.</i> 船长; 机长	46	*comic /'kɒmɪk/ <i>n.</i> 连环画杂志	17
car pool 拼车	102	*complain /kəm'pleɪn/ <i>v.</i> 抱怨	35
carelessly /'keələsli/ <i>adv.</i> 漫不经心地; 粗心地	22	*confused /kən'fju:zd/ <i>adj.</i> 糊涂的, 迷惑的	8
carelessness /'keələsnɪs/ <i>n.</i> 疏忽大意	59	*confusing /kən'fju:zɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i> 难以理解 的, 不清楚的	8
caring /'keərɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i> 乐于助人的, 体贴人的	69	connection /kə'nekʃən/ <i>n.</i> 连接; 关联	78
*carriage /'kærɪdʒ/ <i>n.</i> (旧时载客的) 四轮马车; (火车的)客车厢	54	consider /kən'sɪdə/ <i>v.</i> 仔细考虑; 认为	22
celebrate /'selɪbreɪt/ <i>v.</i> 庆祝, 祝贺	60	continuing /kən'tɪnju:ɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i> 连续不断的	20
Central Asia 中亚	78	continuously /kən'tɪnjuəsli/ <i>adv.</i> 不断地, 持续地	11
century /'sentʃəri/ <i>n.</i> 百年; 世纪	90	correctly /kə'rektlɪ/ <i>adv.</i> 正确地	90
certain /'sɜ:tn/ <i>adj.</i> 某种; 肯定	6	cover /'kʌvə/ <i>v.</i> 盖; 覆盖	34
chairman /'tʃeəmən/ <i>n.</i> 主席	92	*crayon holder 蜡笔套	34
*challenge /'tʃæləndʒ/ <i>n.</i> 挑战	82	creative /kri'eɪtɪv/ <i>adj.</i> 有创造力的	29
*challenging /'tʃæləndʒɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i> 有挑战性的	66	creativity /,kri:'eɪtɪvətɪ/ <i>n.</i> 创造力	29
*chant /tʃɑ:nt/ <i>n.</i> 歌谣	10	cultural /'kʌltʃərəl/ <i>adj.</i> 文化的	66
*character /'kærəktə/ <i>n.</i> 人物, 角色	18	*cure /kjʊə/ <i>v.</i> 治愈	90
*characteristic /,kærəktə'rɪstɪk/ <i>n.</i> 特征, 特点	90	*curiosity /,kjʊəri'ɒsətɪ/ <i>n.</i> 好奇心	18
*charity /'tʃærəti/ <i>n.</i> 慈善; 慈善机构	66	*custom /'kʌstəm/ <i>n.</i> 习惯; 风俗	6
check /tʃek/ <i>n.</i> 账单 <i>v.</i> 检查	8	cut down 减少; 砍倒	32
*cheek /tʃi:k/ <i>n.</i> 面颊, 脸颊	6	<b>D</b>	
		danger /'deɪndʒə/ <i>n.</i> 危险, 风险	32
		*debate /dɪ'beɪt/ <i>v.</i> 辩论 <i>n.</i> 辩论	32



*decay /dr'keɪ/ v. (使)烂, 腐朽	102	European /juərə'pi:ən/ adj. 欧洲的	6
depend /dr'pend/ v. 取决于, 决定于	20	*exist /ɪg'zɪst/ v. 存在	84
depend on 取决于; 依靠	20	*expand /ɪk'spænd/ v. 扩大, 增加	106
*desert /'dezət/ n. 沙漠	78	*extra /'ekstrə/ adj. 额外的	24
*design /dr'zaɪn/ v. 设计 n. 设计	29	<b>F</b>	
*despair /dr'speə/ n. 绝望	80	*faithfully /'feɪθfəli/ adv. 忠诚地	48
*despite /dr'spaɪt/ prep. 尽管; 即使	66	*familiar /fə'mɪljə/ adj. 熟悉的	11
*destination /,destɪ'neɪʃn/ n. 目的地	82	far /fɑ:/ adv. 非常, 大大	30
developer /dr'veləpə/ n. 开发者, 研制者	36	farmland /'fɑ:mlænd/ n. 耕地, 农田	106
differently /'dɪfrəntli/ adv. 不同地	6	*fascinate /'fæsɪneɪt/ v. 深深吸引, 迷住	78
*digital /'dɪdʒɪtl/ adj. 数码的	70	*female /'fi:meɪl/ adj. 女性的	44
direct /də'rekt/ adj. 直接的 v. 投入	58	final /'faɪnəl/ adj. 最终的, 最后的	58
disadvantage /,dɪsəd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ/ n.	25	find out 了解, 弄清楚	78
不利因素		finger /'fɪŋgə/ n. 手指	6
disagree /,dɪsə'gri:/ v. 不同意,	32	fire /'faɪə/ v. 解雇; 射击	70
持不同意见		first-ever 首次的	90
discovery /dr'skʌvəri/ n. 发现	89	fit /fɪt/ v. 可容纳; 适合	35
*disease /dr'zi:z/ n. 疾病	90	*flat /flæt/ adj. 扁平的 n. 公寓	56
DNA 脱氧核糖核酸	90	*flight /flaɪt/ n. 航行, 飞行	41
*draft /dra:ft/ n. 运动员选拔; 草稿	66	*float /fləʊt/ v. 浮动, 漂浮	42
v. 选拔		*flush /flʌʃ/ v. 冲(抽水马桶); 脸红	108
drop /drɒp/ v. 落下 n. 滴; 水珠	18	fly /flaɪ/ n. 苍蝇, v. 飞	18
		*focus /'fəʊkəs/ v. 集中(注意力、精	22
<b>E</b>		力等)	
*eagerly /'i:gəli/ adv. 热切地	22	force /fɔ:s/ v. 迫使, 强迫 n. 力量	18
*earmuff /'iəməf/ n. 耳罩	34	form /fɔ:m/ v. 养成, 形成	20
Earth /ɜ:θ/ n. 地球; 世界	47	*formal /'fɔ:ml/ adj. 正规的	70
*edge /edʒ/ n. 边, 边缘	78	*found /faʊnd/ v. 创建, 创办	66
*effect /ɪ'fekt/ n. 影响; 效果	91	*foundation /faʊn'deɪʃn/ n. 基金会; 基础	66
*effort /'efət/ n. 努力	44	*freckle /'frekəl/ n. 雀斑	54
either way 两者都一样	30	friendship /'frendʃɪp/ n. 友谊	18
*energy /'enədʒi/ n. 能量	32	*frustrated /frʌ'streɪtɪd/ adj. 懊丧, 懊恼	12
engineer /endʒɪ'nɪə/ n. 工程师, 设计师	30	fully /'fʊli/ adv. 充分地, 完全地	94
enjoy oneself 过得愉快	60	*fur /fɜ:/ n. (动物的)皮毛; 软毛	34
*epic /'epɪk/ adj. 巨大的	58		
*equipment /ɪ'kwɪpmənt/ n. 设备, 装备	92		
Europe /'juərəp/ n. 欧洲	77		

## G

*gable /'geɪbl/ <i>n.</i> 三角墙, 山墙	54
*gas /gæs/ <i>n.</i> 汽油; 天然气; 气体	8
*gesture /'dʒestʃə/ <i>n.</i> 手势; 姿势	5
get away 度假, 休假	78
get hold of 抓住	104
get used to 习惯于	8
*global /'gləʊbl/ <i>adj.</i> 全球的, 全世界的	102
global warming 全球变暖	102
*gradually /'grædʒuəli/ <i>adv.</i> 逐渐地, 逐步地	96
*graduation /,grædʒu'eɪʃn/ <i>n.</i> 毕业	58
*gravity /'grævəti/ <i>n.</i> 重力, 地球引力	42
greatly /'greɪtli/ <i>adv.</i> 非常, 很	106
*greet /gri:t/ <i>v.</i> 和(某人)打招呼	6
grey /greɪ/ <i>adj.</i> 灰色的(=gray)	8
guard /gɑ:d/ <i>n.</i> 卫兵, 警卫	56
gun /gʌn/ <i>n.</i> 枪	30

## H

handbag /'hændbæg/ <i>n.</i> 手提包	105
hang /hæŋ/ <i>v.</i> 悬挂	19
hard-working <i>adj.</i> 工作努力的; 辛勤的	66
Harvard 哈佛	58
have a try 尝试一下	12
*headband /'hedbænd/ <i>n.</i> 头带, 束发带	34
*helicopter /'helɪkɒptə/ <i>n.</i> 直升机	30
historical /hɪ'stɒrɪkl/ <i>adj.</i> (有关)历史的	84
hole /həʊl/ <i>n.</i> 洞; 孔	18
honestly /'ɒnɪstli/ <i>adv.</i> 诚实地	22
*honour /'ɒnə/ <i>n.</i> 荣幸; 尊敬 <i>v.</i> 给予表扬; 尊敬	92
*hose /həʊz/ <i>n.</i> 橡皮管	56
Houston Rockets 休斯顿火箭队	66
how-to <i>adj.</i> 提供指南的	17

## I

ice-skate <i>v.</i> 滑冰	34
*image /'ɪmɪdʒ/ <i>n.</i> 图像	11
impatient /ɪm'peɪjnt/ <i>adj.</i> 不耐烦的	70
importantly /ɪm'pɔ:tntli/ <i>adv.</i> 重要地	68
in closing 最后, 在结束前	92
in order to 为了, 目的是	11
*inc. 公司 (=incorporated)	70
Indian /'ɪndiən/ <i>n.</i> 印度人 <i>adj.</i> 印度的	5
Indian Ocean 印度洋	77
industry /'ɪndəstri/ <i>n.</i> 产业; 工业	36
*injury /'ɪndʒəri/ <i>n.</i> 伤害, 损伤	82
*inspire /ɪn'spaɪə/ <i>v.</i> 激励; 启发思考	20
*inspiring /ɪn'spaɪərɪŋ/ <i>adj.</i> 鼓舞人心的, 激励人的	20
instrument /ɪn'strəmənt/ <i>n.</i> 仪器; 乐器	30
international /,ɪntə'næʃnəl/ <i>adj.</i> 国际的	41
international space station 国际空间站	41
invent /ɪn'vent/ <i>v.</i> 发明, 创造	34
inventor /ɪn'ventə/ <i>n.</i> 发明者, 发明家	29
*involved /ɪn'vɒlvd/ <i>adj.</i> 有关的	32
*iron /'aɪən/ <i>n.</i> 铁	56
*Italian /ɪ'tæliən/ <i>adj.</i> 意大利的	30

## J

jacket /'dʒækɪt/ <i>n.</i> 夹克衫	57
Japanese /,dʒæpə'ni:z/ <i>n.</i> 日本人; 日语 <i>adj.</i> 日本的; 日本人的	5
jot down 快速记下	11
juicy /'dʒu:sɪl/ <i>adj.</i> 多汁的	22
*jumper /'dʒʌmpə/ <i>n.</i> (毛或棉的)针织 套衫	8

## K

king /kɪŋ/ <i>n.</i> 国王	56
-------------------------	----



kiss /kɪs/ *v.* 亲吻 *n.* 吻

## L

lab /læb/ *n.* 实验室 89  
(=laboratory /lə'bɒrətəri/)

land /lænd/ *n.* 陆地 *v.* 着陆 18

landmark /'lændmɑ:k/ *n.* 地标; 里程碑 84

\*laser /'leɪzə/ *n.* 激光 36

\*launch /lɔ:ntʃ/ *v.* 发射; 发起 44  
*n.* (航天器的)发射

left-handed *adj.* 左撇子的 30

lift /lɪft/ *v.* 提起 *n.* 电梯 41

lift off 发射, 升空 41

\*literature /'lɪtərəʃə/ *n.* 文学, 文学作品 53

look down on 轻视, 看不起 68

lovely /'lʌvli/ *adj.* 可爱的; 令人愉快的 54

lover /'lʌvə/ *n.* 爱好者 24

## M

Macau /mə'kəʊ/ *n.* 澳门 78

\*major /'meɪdʒə/ *adj.* 重要的, 主要的 78

make a difference 有所作为 11

make up one's mind 决定, 下定决心 54

manned /mænd/ *adj.* 载人的; 有人控 41  
制的, 需人操作的

marriage /'mæɪrɪdʒ/ *n.* 婚姻 58

\*mat /mæt/ *n.* 小地毯, 垫子 56

\*mate /meɪt/ *n.* 朋友, 伙伴 8

\*metaphor /'metəfə/ *n.* 暗喻 81

method /'meθəd/ *n.* 方法 10

\*millionaire /,mɪljə'neɪ/ *n.* 百万富翁 106

\*mirror /'mɪrə/ *n.* 镜子 30

\*mission /'mɪʃn/ *n.* 太空飞行任务 48

\*mitten /'mɪtn/ *n.* 连指手套 35

modern /'mɒdən/ *adj.* 当代的, 现代的 36

\*modest /'mɒdɪst/ *adj.* 谦虚的 66

\*monument /'mɒnjumənt/ *n.* 纪念碑 78

6 \*moreover /mɔ:'əʊvə/ *adv.* 此外, 而且 32

move /mu:v/ *n.* 动作 22

\*muscle /'mʌsl/ *n.* 肌肉 42

musician /'mju:'zɪʃn/ *n.* 音乐家, 作曲家 29

## N

name /neɪm/ *v.* 评为; 命名 66

\*nationality /næʃə'næləti/ *n.* 国籍 5

\*native /'neɪtv/ *adj.* 本地的; 出生地的 8

NBA 美国职业篮球联赛 66

NBA All-Star 美职篮全明星赛 66

need /ni:d/ *n.* 需求 *v.* 需要 20

\*negative /'negətɪv/ *adj.* 负面的; 消极的 71

no longer 不再 12

Nobel Prize 诺贝尔奖 90

nod /nɒd/ *v.* 点头 6

\*normally /'nɔ:məli/ *adv.* 通常, 54  
正常情况下

northern /'nɔ:ðən/ *adj.* 北方的; 向北的 30

north-west 西北 78

note /nəʊt/ *n.* 钞票; 笔记 8

\*novel /'nɒvl/ *n.* 小说 53

\*nuclear /'nju:kliə/ *adj.* 核能的 32

\*nut /nʌt/ *n.* 坚果 82

## O

\*observation /,ɒbzə'veɪʃn/ *n.* 观察 94

\*obviously /'ɒbvɪəsli/ *adv.* 明显地, 显然 56

offer /'ɒfə/ *n.* 建议; 主动提议 22

officer /'ɒfɪsə/ *n.* 官员; 军官 56

once /wʌns/ *conj.* 一……就 48

once upon a time 很久很久以前 56

\*organise /'ɔ:gənaɪz/ *v.* 组织 102

\*organised /'ɔ:gənaɪzɪd/ *adj.* 有条理的 69

\*original /ə'ɪrɪdʒənəl/ *adj.* 原来的, 起初的 68

\*orphan /'ɔ:fn/ *n.* 孤儿 18

Oscar 奥斯卡奖 70

other than 除……之外; 不同于	58	*popsicle /'pɒpsɪkl/ <i>n.</i> 冰棍, 冰棒	34
*outdoor /'aʊtdɔ:/ <i>adj.</i> 户外的	68	*position /pə'zɪʃn/ <i>n.</i> 观点; 位置	32
*overcome /,əʊvə'kʌm/ <i>v.</i> 克服, 解决	82	*pot /pɒt/ <i>n.</i> 罐, 瓶, 壶	94
overweight /,əʊvə'weɪt/ <i>adj.</i> 超重的	96	*power /'paʊə/ <i>n.</i> 能; 能量	32
*owe /əʊ/ <i>v.</i> 归功于, 归因于; 欠(债)	68	*prediction /prɪ'dɪkʃn/ <i>n.</i> 预测	22
owner /'əʊnə/ <i>n.</i> 主人; 所有者	33	preparation /,prepə'reɪʃn/ <i>n.</i> 准备	19
Oxford /'ɒksfəd/ <i>n.</i> 牛津	18	present /prɪ'zent/ <i>v.</i> 颁发, 授予	92
<b>P</b>			
Pacific Ocean 太平洋	77	*pressure /'preʃə/ <i>n.</i> 压力	72
painful /'peɪnfl/ <i>adj.</i> 令人疼痛的; 令人痛苦的	103	*pretend /prɪ'tend/ <i>v.</i> 假装	58
paintbrush /'peɪntbrʌʃ/ <i>n.</i> 漆刷	22	*prevent /prɪ'vent/ <i>v.</i> 防止, 阻止	106
paint /peɪnt/ <i>v.</i> 在……上刷油漆 <i>n.</i> 油漆	22	proper /'prɒpə/ <i>adj.</i> 像样的; 正确的	82
painter /'peɪntə/ <i>n.</i> 画家	30	proudly /'praʊdli/ <i>adv.</i> 骄傲地	106
painting /'peɪntɪŋ/ <i>n.</i> 刷油漆, 绘画	22	provide /prə'vaɪd/ <i>v.</i> 提供	32
pass on 传给	90	*publish /'pʌblɪʃ/ <i>v.</i> 出版	18
passenger /'pæsɪndʒə/ <i>n.</i> 乘客, 旅客	54	*publishing /'pʌblɪʃɪŋ/ <i>n.</i> 出版	36
*pat /pæt/ <i>v.</i> 轻拍	7	put up with 承受, 忍受	70
*path /pɑθ/ <i>n.</i> 道路	80	<b>Q</b>	
patience /'peɪʃns/ <i>n.</i> 耐心	95	*quality /'kwɒləti/ <i>n.</i> 品格; 质量	65
patient /'peɪʃnt/ <i>adj.</i> 有耐心的	94	*quotation /kwəʊ'teɪʃn/ <i>n.</i> 引语, 引文	20
pay off 成功; 奏效	66	<b>R</b>	
period /'pɪərɪəd/ <i>n.</i> 一段时间, 时期	20	raise /reɪz/ <i>v.</i> 抚养; 提升	58
*personality /,pɜ:sə'næləti/ <i>n.</i> 性格, 个性	66	reader /'ri:də/ <i>n.</i> 读者; 电子阅读器	18
*petrol /'petrəl/ <i>n.</i> 汽油	8	realise /'ri:əlaɪz/ <i>v.</i> 实现; 意识到	48
*phrase /frez/ <i>n.</i> 短语, 词组	11	*recognise /'rekəɡnaɪz/ <i>v.</i> 公认, 承认	70
physics /'fɪzɪks/ <i>n.</i> 物理学	48	*recycling /ri:'saɪklɪŋ/ <i>n.</i> 回收利用	102
pick /pɪk/ <i>v.</i> 挑选; 摘	46	*reduce /rɪ'dju:s/ <i>v.</i> 减少, 缩小	102
pick up 拾起, 捡起	46	*refer /rɪ'fɜ:/ <i>v.</i> 参考; 涉及	12
pioneer /,paɪə'nɪə/ <i>n.</i> 先锋, 先驱	30	refer to 查阅; 参考	12
planet /'plænɪt/ <i>n.</i> 行星	41	regret /rɪ'ɡret/ <i>n.</i> 遗憾 <i>v.</i> 感到遗憾	22
play an important role 发挥重要的作用	78	*related /rɪ'reɪtɪd/ <i>adj.</i> 相关的, 有联系的	58
*plot /plɒt/ <i>n.</i> 故事情节	55	related to 与……相关的	58
policewoman /pə'li:s,wʊmən/ <i>n.</i> 女警察	68	remain /rɪ'meɪn/ <i>v.</i> 仍然是, 保持不变	18
pollute /pə'lu:t/ <i>v.</i> 污染	32	remarry /,ri:'mæəri/ <i>v.</i> 再婚	58
pollution /pə'lu:ʃn/ <i>n.</i> 污染	32	*replace /rɪ'pleɪs/ <i>v.</i> 代替	102



researcher /rɪ'sɜ:tʃə/ <i>n.</i> 研究人员	92	shyly /'ʃaɪli/ <i>adv.</i> 羞怯地	54
*resolution /,rezə'lu:ʃn/ <i>n.</i> 结果; 解决	58	silence /'saɪləns/ <i>n.</i> 安静; 沉默	6
*response /rɪ'spɒns/ <i>n.</i> 回答, 回复	32	silent /'saɪlənt/ <i>adj.</i> 沉默的; 安静的	22
*retire /rɪ'taɪə/ <i>v.</i> 退役; 退休	66	silly /'sɪli/ <i>adj.</i> 愚蠢的	18
*retired /rɪ'taɪəd/ <i>adj.</i> 退休的	68	simply /'sɪmpli/ <i>adv.</i> 仅仅, 只是; 简单地	6
reuse /,ri:'ju:z/ <i>v.</i> 再次使用	101	*skin /skɪn/ <i>n.</i> 皮肤	90
*revolution /,revə'lju:ʃn/ <i>n.</i> 革命; 改革	70	*sneaker /'sni:kə/ <i>n.</i> 运动鞋	8
*reward /rɪ'wɔ:d/ <i>v.</i> 奖励, 奖赏	10	society /sə'saɪəti/ <i>n.</i> 社会	18
<i>n.</i> 奖励; 回报		*soil /sɔɪl/ <i>n.</i> 土壤	94
rich /rɪtʃ/ <i>adj.</i> 富有的	58	space flight 太空飞行	41
rise /raɪz/ <i>v.</i> 升起; 提高	42	*spacecraft /'speɪskrɑ:ft/ <i>n.</i> 航天器,	41
role model 榜样	48	宇宙飞船	
Rookie of the Month 月度新星	66	spaceship /'speɪʃɪp/ <i>n.</i> 宇宙飞船	41
round /raʊnd/ <i>n.</i> 一阵	92	*spacesuit /'speɪssju:t/ <i>n.</i> 航天服,	46
<i>adj.</i> 圆形的, 环行的		宇航服	
*route /ru:t/ <i>n.</i> 路线	82	speaker /'spi:kə/ <i>n.</i> 说话者; 发音者;	8
*rude /ru:d/ <i>adj.</i> 粗鲁的; 无礼的	6	扬声器	
run /rʌn/ <i>v.</i> 经营; 跑	35	spelling /'spelɪŋ/ <i>n.</i> 拼写	8
rush /rʌʃ/ <i>v.</i> 迅速移动	60	*spot /spɒt/ <i>n.</i> 地点; 斑点	56
Russian /'rʌʃn/ <i>n.</i> 俄罗斯人; 俄语	5	*sprout /spraut/ <i>n.</i> 苗, 新芽	94
		standard /'stændəd/ <i>adj.</i> 标准的,	8
		正常的 <i>n.</i> 标准	
<b>S</b>		state /steɪt/ <i>v.</i> 陈述	70
*satellite /'sætələɪt/ <i>n.</i> 人造卫星	44	steal /sti:l/ <i>v.</i> 偷, 偷窃	19
*scale /skeɪl/ <i>n.</i> 程度	58	steel /sti:l/ <i>n.</i> 钢	34
*scenic /si:nɪk/ <i>adj.</i> 风景优美的	58	*stir /stɜ:/ <i>n.</i> , <i>v.</i> 搅动, 搅拌	34
schooling /'sku:lɪŋ/ <i>n.</i> 学校教育	70	*structure /'strʌktʃə/ <i>n.</i> 结构	10
*seedling /'si:dɪŋ/ <i>n.</i> 秧苗, 幼苗	106	*style /stɑɪl/ <i>n.</i> 风格	84
separate /'sepəreɪt/ <i>v.</i> 分离; 划分	59	*subtitle /'sʌbtɑɪtl/ <i>n.</i> 字幕	11
*series /'sɪəri:z/ <i>n.</i> 系列	58	sub-zero 零度以下的	82
set /set/ <i>v.</i> 落下; 放置	42	*suit /sju:t/ <i>v.</i> 适合	10
*sew /seʊ/ <i>v.</i> 缝, 做针线活	34	*suitcase /'sju:tkeɪs/ <i>n.</i> (旅行用的)	90
shape /ʃeɪp/ <i>n.</i> 状况; 形状	82	手提箱	
*sharp /ʃɑ:p/ <i>adj.</i> 尖锐的	83	*summary /'sʌməri/ <i>n.</i> 总结	25
shopping mall 购物广场	84	*sweep /swi:p/ <i>v.</i> 轻轻擦	22
shoulder /'ʃəʊldə/ <i>n.</i> 肩, 肩膀	6		
*shrug /ʃrʌg/ <i>v.</i> 耸肩	6		

## T

table /'teɪbl/ <i>n.</i> 表格; 桌子	12
take a look at 看一下……	22
take action 采取行动	101
take off 脱去; 去掉	46
take part 参加, 参与	108
take turns 轮流	102
*tap /tæp/ <i>n.</i> 水龙头	108
teammate /'ti:mmeɪt/ <i>n.</i> 队友	66
*tense /tens/ <i>n.</i> 时态	12
the Bund 上海外滩	84
the Gobi Desert 戈壁滩	78
the Middle East 中东地区	6
the Oriental Pearl Tower 东方明珠	84
the Silk Road 丝绸之路	78
theme park 主题公园	58
thick /θɪk/ <i>adj.</i> 粗的; 厚的	56
*thief /θi:f/ <i>n.</i> 贼, 小偷	19
thinking /'θɪŋkɪŋ/ <i>n.</i> 思考	34
*thumb /θʌm/ <i>n.</i> 拇指	6
tie /taɪ/ <i>v.</i> (用绳、线等)系, 拴, 绑	42
*tightly /'taɪtlɪ/ <i>adv.</i> 紧紧地	35
*tip /tɪp/ <i>n.</i> 实用的提示; 小费	10
to start with 首先	104
ton /tʌn/ <i>n.</i> 吨	102
*topic /'tɒpɪk/ <i>n.</i> 主题; 话题	12
touch /tʌtʃ/ <i>n.</i> 一点儿, 少许; 触觉 <i>v.</i> 触摸	22
towards /tə'wɔ:dz/ <i>prep.</i> 向, 朝, 对着	108
trade /treɪd/ <i>v.</i> 互相交换; 做买卖 <i>n.</i> 贸易	78
traffic jam 堵车	32
traveller /'trævlə/ <i>n.</i> 旅行者	6
treasure /'treʒə/ <i>v.</i> 珍视, 珍爱	68
treat /tri:t/ <i>n.</i> 乐趣, 乐事	34
*trunk /trʌŋk/ <i>n.</i> 象鼻; 树干	56
*tube /tju:b/ <i>n.</i> 管, 管子	35
*tusk /tʌsk/ <i>n.</i> (象或某些其他动物的) 长牙	56

\*typesetting /'taɪpsetɪŋ/ *n.* 排版 36

## U

uncomfortable /ʌn'kʌmfətəbl/ <i>adj.</i>	46
不舒服的	
unknown /,ʌn'nəʊn/ <i>adj.</i> 未知的,	46
不详的	
unlike /,ʌn'laɪk/ <i>prep.</i> 不像, 与……不同	24
unlucky /ʌn'lʌki/ <i>adj.</i> 不幸的	47
unmanned /,ʌn'mænd/ <i>adj.</i> 无人的;	41
无人控制的	
upon /ə'pɒn/ <i>prep.</i> 当……时; 在……上	56
ups and downs 沉浮; 兴衰	80
used /ju:st/ <i>adj.</i> 习惯于	8
<i>ju:zd/ adj.</i> 用过的, 旧的	
usual /'ju:ʒʊəl/ <i>adj.</i> 寻常的, 通常的	58

## V

value /'vælju:/ <i>v.</i> 重视, 珍视	66
*verb /vɜ:b/ <i>n.</i> 动词	12
*verse /vɜ:s/ <i>n.</i> 诗节	81
*vet /vet/ <i>n.</i> 兽医	103
*voting /'vəʊtɪŋ/ <i>n.</i> 选举, 投票	66

## W

*waterfront /'wɔ:təfrʌnt/ <i>n.</i> 滨水区	84
*wave /weɪv/ <i>v.</i> 挥手; 挥臂 <i>n.</i> 波浪; 海浪	5
*weapon /'wepən/ <i>n.</i> 武器	32
well-known <i>adj.</i> 著名的, 众所周知的	20
West /west/ <i>n.</i> 西方 (国家)	6
western /'westən/ <i>adj.</i> 西方的	6
*wire /'waɪə/ <i>n.</i> 金属丝	34
*wonderland /'wʌndərlænd/ <i>n.</i> 仙境	18
work out 计划, 思考; 进展顺利	10
worth /wɜ:θ/ <i>adj.</i> 有……的价值	106
*wrist /rɪst/ <i>n.</i> 手腕	35
Wristies /'rɪstɪz/ <i>n.</i> 手腕套	34



**Y**

yet /jet/ *adv.* 还, 尚

94

北京师范大学出版社

# Irregular Verbs

Base form	Simple past	Past participle	Base form	Simple past	Past participle
be	was, were	been	go	went	gone
bear	bore	born	grow	grew	grown
become	became	become	hang (悬挂)	hung	hung
begin	began	begun	have (has)	had	had
blow	blew	blown	hear	heard	heard
break	broke	broken	hide	hid	hidden
bring	brought	brought	hit	hit	hit
build	built	built	hold	held	held
burn	burnt / burned	burnt / burned	hurt	hurt	hurt
buy	bought	bought	keep	kept	kept
can	could	—	know	knew	known
catch	caught	caught	lay	laid	laid
choose	chose	chosen	lead	led	led
come	came	come	learn	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
cost	cost	cost	leave	left	left
cut	cut	cut	lend	lent	lent
deal	dealt	dealt	let	let	let
do	did	done	lie (躺)	lay	lain
draw	drew	drawn	light	lit / lighted	lit / lighted
dream	dreamt / dreamed	dreamt / dreamed	lose	lost	lost
drink	drank	drunk	make	made	made
drive	drove	driven	may	might	—
eat	ate	eaten	mean	meant	meant
fall	fell	fallen	meet	met	met
feed	fed	fed	mistake	mistook	mistaken
feel	felt	felt	must	must	—
fight	fought	fought	pay	paid	paid
find	found	found	put	put	put
fly	flew	flown	read /ri:d/	read /red/	read /red/
forget	forgot	forgotten	ride	rode	ridden
get	got	got	ring	rang	rung
give	gave	given	run	ran	run



Base form	Simple past	Past participle	Base form	Simple past	Past participle
<b>say</b>	said	said	<b>spend</b>	spent	spent
<b>see</b>	saw	seen	<b>spread</b>	spread	spread
<b>sell</b>	sold	sold	<b>stand</b>	stood	stood
<b>send</b>	sent	sent	<b>steal</b>	stole	stolen
<b>set</b>	set	set	<b>stick</b>	stuck	stuck
<b>shake</b>	shook	shaken	<b>swim</b>	swam	swum
<b>shall</b>	should	—	<b>take</b>	took	taken
<b>shine</b>	shone	shone	<b>teach</b>	taught	taught
<b>show</b>	showed	shown / showed	<b>tell</b>	told	told
<b>sing</b>	sang	sung	<b>think</b>	thought	thought
<b>sit</b>	sat	sat	<b>throw</b>	threw	thrown
<b>sleep</b>	slept	slept	<b>understand</b>	understood	understood
<b>smell</b>	smelt / smelled	smelt / smelled	<b>wake</b>	woke	woken
<b>speak</b>	spoke	spoken	<b>wear</b>	wore	worn
<b>spell</b>	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled	<b>will</b>	would	—
			<b>win</b>	won	won
			<b>write</b>	wrote	written

## 后 记

《北师大版义务教育教科书》由众多国家基础教育课程标准研制组负责人和核心成员、学科专家、教育专家、心理学专家和特级教师参加编写，研究基础深厚、教育理念先进、编写质量上乘、服务水平专业。教材力求反映国家基础教育课程标准精神，重视多种信息资源手段的利用，体现最新的学科进展，强调知识、技能在实际生活中的应用，贴近学生生活，关注学生的学习过程，促进每一个学生的全面发展，满足学生多样化的学习需求。

《北师大版义务教育教科书·英语》（7~9年级）结合初中学生学习英语的特点，以培养学生的综合语言运用能力为目标，以教会学生“用英语做事情”为基本思路，以话题、结构、功能和学会学习为编排主线，科学合理地安排教材容量和难度，精心编选有利于促进学生语言、思维、情感、策略和文化意识整体发展的语言素材，循序渐进地引导学生发展语言能力、思维能力和自主学习能力，帮助学生形成积极向上的情感态度价值观和初步的跨文化交流的意识。

本教材的教学活动设计力求从学生生活经验、学习兴趣和认知特点出发，倡导在语境中理解和体验语言的意义，通过参与、体验、探究、实践等多种活动形式，帮助学生巩固和内化语言，逐步形成语言学习的自信心和运用所学语言交流信息与经历、表达观点和情感的能力。

为了确保本教材与小学和高中英语课程的有效衔接，教材遵循语言学习的规律，精选学习内容，力求从知识体系、能力发展、情感态度、文化意识和学习策略等各方面起到承接小学、开启高中的作用，保证英语学习的整体性、渐进性和持续性。

本套教材主编王蔷，副主编曹瑞珍、陈则航；编写组成员有马欣、王琦、蒋京丽、刘雯、王源等。还有很多实验区教研员和一线教师为教材的编写和修改提供了宝贵的意见，在此一并表示衷心的感谢！

由于时间仓促，教材中的错误在所难免，恳请使用批评指正。欢迎来电来函与我们联系：北京师范大学出版社基础教育分社（100088），（010）58806740，czyy@bnupg.com。

北京师范大学出版社